

# THE BŪSTĀN

BY

SHAIKH MUSLIḤU-D-DĪN SA'DĪ,  
SHĪRĀZĪ,

TRANSLATED FOR THE FIRST TIME INTO PROSE,

WITH

EXPLANATORY NOTES AND INDEX,

BY

CAPTAIN H. WILBERFORCE CLARKE, R.E.

548

LONDON:

H. ALLEN AND CO., 13 WATERLOO PLACE.

PUBLISHERS TO THE INDIA OFFICE.

---

1879.

LONDON  
PRINTED BY W. H. ALLEN & CO., 13 WATERLOO PLACE.



## CONTENTS.

548

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1
CHAPTER I.—ON JUSTICE, EQUITY, AND ADMINISTRATION OF GOVERNMENT . . . . .	26
CHAPTER II.—ON BENEFICENCE . . . . .	123
CHAPTER III.—ON LOVE . . . . .	172
CHAPTER IV.—ON HUMILITY . . . . .	213
CHAPTER V.—ON RESIGNATION . . . . .	264
CHAPTER VI.—ON CONTENTMENT . . . . .	284
CHAPTER VII.—ON EDUCATION . . . . .	301
CHAPTER VIII.—ON THANKS . . . . .	343
CHAPTER IX.—ON REPENTANCE . . . . .	368
CHAPTER X.—ON PRAYER . . . . .	399
SUPPLEMENTARY NOTE . . . . .	411
INDEX . . . . .	415

## NOTE ON THE FRONTISPIECE.

THE Frontispiece is a portrait of Shaikh Muslihu-d-din Sa'di Shírází, by a Persian artist, from a picture in the Haftán, built by Vakíl Karím Khán in 1775-79.

The Haftán, near Shíráz, is an enclosure 33 by 110 yards, containing the graves of seven darveshes whose names are unknown; and an 'imárat, or edifice, in which are two oil-portraits—one of Sa'di, half life-size, over the door on the west side; and the other of Háfiz, in a niche, over the door on the east side.

The bowl in Sa'di's hand is called "Kashkúl," or alms-bowl.

For a full description of this picture see Vol. I. of Binney's "Travels in Persia."

Through the kindness of Mr. J. J. Falne, of the Persian Telegraph Department, this copy of the picture was obtained for this work.

---

## ERRATUM

Page 325, line 9, *to* From which the wife's clamour issues loudly, *read* From which, loud issues the wife's clamour.

# THE BUSTAN<sup>1</sup>

## OF

### OUR LORD SA'DI.

---

IN THE NAME OF GOD, THE MERCIFUL, THE COMPASSIONATE !

---

#### INTRODUCTION.

- <sup>1</sup> In the name of the Lord life-creating !  
The Wise One speech-creating within the tongue !  
The Lord, the giver, hand-seizing !  
Merciful, sin-forgiving, excuse-accepting !  
<sup>2</sup> King such that whosoever turned away his head from  
His door  
Found not any respect at the doors to which he went,  
The heads of kings, neck-exalting,  
(Are), at His court, on the ground of supplication.  
<sup>3</sup> He does not instantly seize the froward ;  
He does not drive away, with violence, those excuse-  
bringing.
- 

<sup>3</sup> "Sar az dar táftan" signifies to be disobedient.  
"Azíze" signifies a king ; it is applied to God.

And, though He becomes angry at bad conduct,  
When thou didst return, He cancelled the past circumstance  
(in the book of sins).

The two worlds (this and the next) are (like) a drop in  
the sea of His knowledge;  
He sees a crime, but in mercy covers it with a screen.

If a person seeks a quarrel with his father,  
Doubtless, the father becomes very angry.

And, if a relation be not satisfied with a relation (on  
account of bad conduct),  
He drives him from before him, like strangers.

10 And if the clever slave is not of use,  
The master holds him not dear,

And, if thou art not kind to friends,  
The friend will fly from thee to the distance of a league.

And if a soldier abandons service,  
The king army-leading becomes quit of him.

But, the Lord of high and low (God),  
Shuts not the door of food on anyone, on account of his  
sin.

The embroidered leather surface of the earth is His co-  
table;

At this open table, whether enemy (infidel), or  
(the faithful)—what matter?

---

14 "Adhím" is a sweet-smelling grained and coloured skin,  
sometimes called "sakh̄tiyán." Kings and Amírs spread this  
eat food from off it. God most High having made the "adhím"  
earth the treasure-chest of his creatures, all the people eat off it  
"Kh̄wán-i-yagh̄má" is the tray of food which liberal people  
and to which they invite the poor.

And if He had hastened against one tyranny-practising,  
Who would have obtained safety from the hand of His  
violence?

His nature (is) free from suspicion of opposition and simi-  
litude;  
His kingdom independent of the devotion of jinn and  
mankind.

The servant of His order every thing and person :  
The son of Ádam, and fowl, and ant, and fly.

He spreads so wide a tray of liberality,  
That the Símurgh ~~in~~ (the mountains of) Káf (the Caucasus)  
enjoys a portion.

Grace and liberality diffusing, and work executing;  
Because He is the Possessor of Creation, and Knower  
of secrets.

In

The ~~and~~ ~~and~~ ~~egotism~~ are proper for Him,  
The ~~ose~~ kingdom is ancient, and nature independent.

The

Me

He places the crown of fortune on the head of one;  
He brings another from a throne to the dust.

Found

(has) the cap of Good-Fortune on his head;  
The he, the blanket of Mis-fortune on his body.  
(Are), a

He doe

He doe

brine may also be rendered :—

nd, if he had hastened in the way of tyranny.

of God is free from the evil imputation of similitude, and  
ie same nature, made by those opposed to His commands.

3 "Sar" is a rare fabulous bird, sometimes called "anḳá."

"Azízi" a "postín," which is a cloth made of the hair of the goat

He makes a fire, a rose-garden, for Ibráhím;  
 He takes a crowd, from the waters of the Níl, to the fire  
 (of Hell).

If *that* (making the fire a rose-garden)—it is the written  
 order of His beneficence;  
 And, if *this* (the destruction of Far'ún in the Níl)—it is  
 the sign manual of His order.

25 Behind the screen He sees bad acts:  
 By His own favour, He covers them with a veil.

If, with threatening, He draws forth the sharp sword of  
 Command,  
 The Cherubim will remain deaf and dumb.

And if, from the tray of Liberality, He gives victuals to be  
 carried home,  
 'Azázíl (*i.e.* Satan) will say, "I may carry away a good  
 portion."

At the Court of His grace and greatness,  
 The Great Ones have put greatness out of their heads.

In mercy, near to those who are distressed:  
 A hearer of the prayer of those supplication-making.

30 Concerning circumstances not yet come to pass, His know-  
 ledge penetrating;  
 As to secrets unspoken, His grace informed.

By power, the Guardian of high (sky) and low (earth),  
 The Lord of the Court of the day of reckoning (Judgment-  
 day).

23 "Khalíl," meaning "the friend of God," is one of the titles of Ibráhím.  
 Nimrúd threw Ibráhím into the fire; but God made the fire a rose-  
 garden for Ibráhím's sake, so that his auspicious body received no hurt.  
 "Gurohe" refers to Far'ún and his host, who were drowned in the  
 waters of the *Níle*. God sent them to Hell.

31 "Hasb" is written for "hisáb" for poetry sake.

The back of a person is not free from obedience to Him  
(it must bend);

On His word, there is not room for the finger of a person  
(in slander).

The ancient doer of good, good-approving;

With the reed of Destiny, in the womb, picture-painting.

From the east to the west, the moon and sun,  
He put into motion; and spread the firmament on the  
water.

35 The earth, from distress of earthquake, became stupefied;  
On its skirt, He drove down a mountain as a nail.

He gives to the seed of man, a form like a parí;  
Who has made a painting on the water?

He places the ruby and turquoise, in the back-bone (middle)  
of the rock;  
The red rose, on the branch of green colour.

From the cloud, He casts a drop towards the ocean;  
From the back-bone (of the father) He brings the seed  
into the womb.

From *that* drop, He makes an incomparable pearl;  
And from *this*, He makes a form (of man) like the lofty  
cypress.

40 The knowledge of a single atom is not hidden from Him,  
To whom the evident and the hidden are one.

He prepares the daily food of the snake and the ant;  
Although, they are without hands, and feet, and strength.

33 God said:—(*Arabic.*) "He who paints you in the womb."

35 For "tab," "zuhmat," or "hamí," as sometimes read.

The earth is supposed to be stretched out flat, like a carpet, with the  
hills planted on it, to keep it steady.

By His order, He pourtrayed existence from non-existence ;

Who, except Him, knows how to make the existing from the non-existing ?

Another time, He takes away (creation) to the concealment of non-existence ;

And, thence conveys (it) to the plain of the place of assembling (the Resurrection).

(The people of the) world are agreed to His divine origin ;  
Overpowered in respect to the substance of His essence.

45 The people discovered not what was beyond His majesty ;  
The vision discovered not the extent of His power.

The bird of Fancy flies not to the summit of His nature ;  
The power of the intellect arrives not at the skirt of His  
description.

In this whirlpool, a thousand ships (of reason) foundered,  
In such a way that not a plank was found on the marge.

Many nights, I sate lost in this journey (of thought of God),  
When (suddenly) terror seized my sleeve, saying, "Get up !"

The knowledge of the King (God) is the encircler of the wide plain (of creation) ;  
Thy conjecture becomes not the encircler of Him.

48 Terror overpowered me, so that I lagged behind ; because the condition of knowledge is the comprehending by a learned man of the thing found out, or being equal with it. But this condition, on our side, is not.

In some copies the first line reads :—

Many nights, I sate silent in this world (of thought of God).

19 "Kiyás." God has no similitude, and His knowledge is without equal ; then conjecture regarding Him cannot be encircling or comprehending.



50 Genius reaches not to the substance of His nature,  
Thought reaches not to the profundity of His qualities.

One can attain to (the 'Arab poet), Suhbán, in eloquence ;  
(But) one cannot reach to the substance of God without  
equal.

Because the immature ones have on this road urged the  
steed (of thought),  
At (the words) "lá ahsá," they have wearied of the  
pace.

One cannot gallop a steed in every place,  
Places there are where it is proper to cast the shield (yield).

And, if a traveller (a pious one) becomes acquainted with  
the secret of God,  
They (the angels) will shut on him the door of returning  
(to the world).

51 Suhbán Wail was an 'Arab orator, who was so eloquent that he would  
not repeat a word, but express his meaning in different language.

52 I cannot reckon Thy praises of Thyself ; but Thou art such an One that  
Thou hast made Thy own praise of Thyself. "Lá aḥṣā" signifies "I  
cannot count Thy praises." The meaning is—A person cannot attain  
to the substance of the God without equal so that he may describe His  
perfection ; because the best of persons in respect to this truth have  
made conjectures, but at at this phrase, "lá aḥṣā," they were  
confounded.

According to the holy tradition:—(*Arabic.*) "I cannot reckon Thy  
praises, Oh God, as Thou dost know Thyself."

53 In this religious idea they have made this comparison:—If a person  
looks at the signs of the sun, his eyes become dark and obscure. Even  
so if a person looks at the signs of God most High, he knows that He is  
the Creator of the strange, and the One who causes wonderful things to  
happen. But, if he wishes to understand the substance of His nature,  
his reason becomes dark and obscure.

As in the traditions:—(*Arabic.*) "In this case think only that there  
is one God ; do not think of the substance of God."

"Sipar andákhṭan" signifies—to fly, to make submission, to be feeble ;  
or, in respect to God most High, one cannot make reflection.

54 As in the traditions:—(*Arabic.*) "Who knows God, his tongue is  
dumb."

In the "Iḳd-i-manẓúm," couplets 54 to 67 are omitted.

That person, who chooses the way opposite to the Prophet,  
Will never arrive at the stage (of his journey).

Oh Sa'dí! think not that the path of purity,  
One can travel, except behind the Chosen One (Muhammad).

Generous of dispositions, beautiful of natures!  
The Prophet of creatures, the Intercessor of nations!

<sup>70</sup> The Imám of the prophets, the Leader of the road!  
The faithful of God, the place of descent of the Angel  
Jibrá'il!

The Intercessor of mortals, the Lord of raising and dispersing (the Judgment-day)!

The Imám of the guides, the Chief of the Court of  
Assembling (the Resurrection)!

The Speaker, whose Mount Sinai is the celestial sphere;  
All lights are the rays of his light.

The orphan (Muhammad) who, the Kurán un-completed,  
Washed the library of (effaced) so many religions,

When anger drew forth his sword of terror,  
Struck, by a miracle, the waist of the moon in two halves.

<sup>69</sup> "Karíma-l-sajáyá" is one possessed of great qualities and good habits; who gives information about God to the people, and is an intercessor with God for them; and who asks pardon from God for the Muslims of the earth. From couplet 69 to 80 is in praise of Muhammad.

<sup>70</sup> "Imám" is one who precedes, or leads, the prophets. *Faithful*, because Muhammad concealed not any part of the revelation of God. The angel Jibrá'il descended on Muhammad with the Kurán.

<sup>72</sup> Kalíme has yá, e waḥdat. The ladder of Moses, "the Speaker of God," was Túr, or Mount Sinai. The author, having alluded to it, says, "Our Prophet, Muhammad, is like Moses, whose Túr, that is to say his ladder, is the sphere. They have said:—Although Muṣa spoke to God on Mount Túr, the highest sphere is the base of the Túr of Muhammad. In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 72 to 97 are omitted.

<sup>74</sup> This miracle is said to have occurred at Makka.

75 When his fame fell in the mouths of the people of the world,

An earthquake occurred in the court of Kisrí (King Naushiraván).

By the words—lá iláha illa-lláh—he broke into small pieces (the idol) Lát;

For the honour of religion, he took away the reputation of (the idol) 'Uzzá.

He brought not forth the dust of (the idols) Lát and 'Uzzá (only);

But made the Old Testament and Gospel obsolete.

One night he sate (on the beast Burák); he passed beyond the Heavens:

In majesty and grandeur, he exceeded the angels.

So impetuous, he urged (his steed) into the plain of propinquity (to God),

While Jibrá'il remained behind him, at the tree of paradise.

80 The Chief of the sacred house (of the Ka'ba) spoke to him, Saying:—"Oh, bearer of the Divine Revelation! move proudly higher.

"When thou didst find me sincere in friendship,

"Why didst thou twist the reins from my love?"

Jibrá'il said:—"The power to move higher was not to me:

"I remained here, because the power of wing remained not to me.

75 Kisrí was the name of King Naushiraván the Just; it became a title of the kings of Persia.

76 There is no god but God!

77 The revelation of the Old Testament descended on Moses; that of the New Testament, or Anjíl, on 'Iṣā, or Jesus. See note 70.

78 From couplet 78 to 98 is on Muḥammad's ascent to the ninth heaven. For a full account, see the Sikandar-Náma.

79 The *Sudra* is a tree in the seventh heaven; it is called the tree of paradise, or "sudra u-l-muntahā." The angels cannot go beyond it. The seventh heaven is the mansion of the angel Jibrá'il.

" If I fly one hair's breadth higher,  
 " The effulgence of splendour will burn my feathers."

On account of sins, a person remains not in restraint,  
 Who has such a Lord (Muhammad) as guide.

85 What acceptable praise may I say to thee?  
 Oh, Prophet of Mortals! peace be on thee!

May the benedictions of angels be on thy soul!  
 May they be on thy companions and followers!

First Abú-Bakr, the old disciple;  
 'Umar, grasp on the convolution of the contumacious demon  
 (Satan);

The wise 'Usmán, night, alive-keeping;  
 The fourth 'Alí-Shán, Duldul, riding.

Oh God! by the right of the sons of Fátima,  
 May I, on the word of faith, conclude (my life)!

90 If thou dost reject my claim, or if thou dost accept,  
 I, and the hand, and the skirt of the offspring of the  
 Prophet (are together).

Oh chief happy footed! what loss occurs  
 Of thy exalted dignity, at the court of the Living One,

That there are a few beggars of the tribe,  
 Humble companions, guests, at the House of Safety  
 (paradise)?

86 "Darúd" is a salutation, which means:—from God—*mercy*; from angels—asking pardon; from men—praise and prayer; from animals—praise.

88 "Duldul" was the name of 'Alí's mule.

89 In the traditions:—(*Arabic*.) "He whose last words are lá iláha illa-l-láh! will indeed enter paradise."

92 Tufail was the name of a person of the tribe of Umayya, who, in a state of distress and poverty, used to go without invitation to the rejoicings of men and to their bridal feasts. The Persians call such an

God praised and honoured thee (oh Muhammad!)  
Jabrâ'il performed the ground-kiss of thy worth.

The lofty sky, before thy worth, (is) ashamed,  
Thou created, and man yet water and clay.

95 Thou from the first, the essence of the existence of man;  
Whatever else became existent is an offshoot from thee.

I know not what words I may say to thee,  
Who art higher than what I say of thee.

To thee, the honour of—"but for thee"—is sufficient  
grandeur;  
Thy praise in the verse of the Kurán—táhá wa yasín—is  
sufficient.

What praise may the imperfect Sa'dí make?  
Oh Prophet! on thee be benedictions, and safety!

In the extremes of the world, I wondered much;  
With every one, I passed my time.

100 From every corner, I found pleasure;  
From every harvest, I obtained an ear of corn.

one "the uninvited guest," or "the uninvited companion of a person going to a feast." The meaning of the sentence is—Thy great dignity, Oh Muhammad! at the court of God most High, becomes not less, if, at the feast of paradise, a handful of beggars, like the man Tufail, are thy guests.

94 In the traditions:—(Arabic.) "Whatever God created,—my soul first."  
And again:—(Arabic.) "I was Prophet, and Adam between water and clay."

97 According to the holy saying of God:—(Arabic.) "Oh, Muhammad! hadst thou not been, I would not have created the sky."

99 "Ba sar burdan" signifies—to bring to an end, or finish. From couplet 99 to 128 is on the cause of the versification of this Book.

Like the pure ones of Shíráz of dust-like (submissive) disposition,

I saw not (one).—May mercy be on this pure soil (of Shíráz)!

The cultivating of friendship of the men of this pure soil,  
Drew away my heart from Syria and Turkey.

I said to my heart :—" From Egypt, they bring sugar ;  
They take it as a present to friends."

From all that garden (of the world), I was loath  
To go empty-handed to my friends.

105 If my hand be empty of that sugar,  
There are words sweeter than sugar—

Not that sugar that men apparently enjoy ;  
But that, which the lords of truth take away on paper  
(with respect).

When I completed this palace of wealth,  
I prepared in it ten doors (chapters) of instruction.

One chapter is on Justice, and Deliberation, and Judgment ;  
The guarding of the people, and the fear of God.

(In) the second chapter, I laid the foundation of Beneficence,  
That the benefactor may praise (by liberality) the excellence of God.

104 In the 'Ik̄d-i-manẓúm, this couplet is omitted.

06 " K̄ande " has yá,e waḥdat.

07 In the 'Ik̄d-i-manẓúm, couplets 107 to 190 are omitted.

08 Before the words which constitute the subject of each chapter, the word " dar " should be understood, as " dar 'adl."

110 The third chapter is on Love (of God), and Phrenzy, and Perturbation,—

Not the worldly love that men fasten, with force, on themselves.

The fourth chapter is on Humility; the fifth,—Contentment;

The sixth,—the description of the man Contentment-choosing.

The seventh chapter on the description of the Science of Education;

The eighth chapter,—on thanks for safety.

The ninth chapter is on Repentance and the way of Rectitude;

The tenth,—on Prayers and the Conclusion of the book.

On the august day, and happy year;

On the auspicious date, between the two 'ídds,—

115 It was fifty-five years more than six hundred,  
Since that this renowned treasury (the Bústán) became full  
of pearls (of eloquence).

110 "Mastí" signifies—kharábí (intoxication), a state in which a person makes himself (kharáb) enraptured in the knowledge of God.

"Mai" signifies—be~~kh~~udí (senselessness), ecstasy, or the state in which a person considers himself non-existent.

~~And~~ "Kharábí wa be~~kh~~udí," signifying—the true state of the lovers of God. And it may may be mentioned that, similarly, sáqí (a cup-bearer) signifies:—

The Divine promise; a spiritual guide; or, a source of Divine bounties.

112 For "az" read "dar baiyán."

114 One 'ídd is the breaking of the fast of Ramaẓán; the other 'ídd is the day on which sacrifices are offered ahmakkah, or the sacrifice of the solemn festival of Bairám.

My jewel of speech has remained in a woman's veil;  
Yet from shame, I carry my head on my bosom.

Because, in the sea there is the pearl and also the oyster  
(pearl-less);  
In the garden there is the lofty tree and the small.

Ho ! oh wise man of happy disposition !  
I have not heard the skilful one, a defect-seeker.

If the coat be of silk, or if painted and embroidered,  
Of necessity, its quilting (of cotton) is in the interior.

120 If thou dost not obtain the painted and embroidered silk,  
fret not,  
Do the work of Liberality, and cover my redundant words.

I boast not of the capital of my own excellence ;  
I have brought my hands in front, in beggary.

I (have) heard that in the day of hope and fear (the resur-  
rection),  
The Merciful One will pardon the bad for the sake of the  
good.

If thou also dost see evil in my words,  
Act, in imitation of the world-Creator.

116 "Dámaní" is a fine linen, or painted silk veil, worn by ladies ; it is sometimes called *miḡna'*, which signifies a coif of fine linen two cubits (3 feet) long, worn by Arabian women at home and abroad. The word is here used to show that the jewels of speech were so abundant that a woman's veil was required to hold them.

"*Sar andar burdan or zadan*" signifies—to plunge the head in the collar of reflection, or to be thoughtful and amazed.

I raise not my head, because in my words goodness (eloquence) and evil (defect) are mingled.

123 God, on the day of resurrection, will pardon the bad for the sake of the good. So, for the sake of my good words, do not thou sneer at the ill words which may fall under thy notice.



When one couplet, out of a thousand, is pleasing to thee,  
In the name of manliness! restrain thy hand from  
criticism.

125 Assuredly, in Persia, my creation (the Bústán),  
Is priceless, like musk in Khutn.

Like the noise of the drum, the fear of me was afar.  
In my absence, my defect was veiled.

Sa'dí brings the rose to the garden  
With sauciness; and pepper to Hindústán.

Like the date, skin with sweetness encrusted;  
When thou dost open it, a bone (a stone or difficulty) is  
inside.

My disposition had no desire for this kind (of composition);  
It had no wish for the praising of kings.

130 But, I threaded the pearls (of poetry) in the name of a  
certain one;  
Perhaps, the holy men may unfold,

That Sa'dí, who snatched the ball of eloquence,  
Was (lived) in the days of Abú-Bakr, the son of Sa'd.

If in his time, I boast—it is fit;  
Even as, the Lord (Muhammad) in the time of (King)  
Naushírawán.

125 Khutn is a musk-producing country of Turkistán. Sa'dí remarks that, in Persia, there are many compositions like the "Bústán"; hence, only out of Persia will the "Bústán" be valued.

126 Those afar off knew not my defects.

127 "Shankh!" signifies—without fear, bashfulness, or shame.

129 From couplet 129 to 175 is in praise of:—

Muhammad Atábak Abú Bakr-i-Sa'd-i-Zangí, to whom this work is  
dedicated. He died in <sup>658 A.H.</sup>  
<sup>1260 A.D.</sup>

132 Muhammad was born in the time of King Naushírawán the Just.  
Muhammad says:—(*Arabic*.) "I was born in the time of the just king."

A world-guardian, and Faith-cherisher, and justice-distributor—

Came not after (Khalífa) 'Umar, like (King) Abú-Bakr.

133 Abú-Bakr was the first, 'Umar the second, and 'Usmán the third Khalífa. They reigned respectively 2, 12, and 12 years. Abú-Bakr was the father of 'A'isha, Muḥammad's favourite wife. King Abú-Bakr is not to be confounded with the Khalífa of the same name.

These Khulafá were succeeded by 'Alí, the cousin of Muḥammad, who had married Fátima, the daughter of the Prophet. The Sunnis acknowledge Abú-Bakr, 'Umar, 'Usmán and 'Alí. The Shíahs reject these, and consider that 'Alí was the rightful heir to Muḥammad. 'Alí was assassinated in A.D. 660 in the Masjid, at Kúfa; he was succeeded by his eldest son Ḥasan, who gave place to Mu'awiyya, the enemy of his father. It is believed that Ḥasan was afterwards poisoned.

'Alí's younger son Ḥusain, on the death of Mu'awiyya and accession of his son Yazíd, escaped to Makkah. Misled by the representations of the people of Kúfa, he set out for that city with 100 men.

On the plains of Kerbela, 5,000 men were opposed to him; his party were massacred. The corpse of Ḥusain was subjected to many indignities. This took place in A.D. 680.

The Persians (Shí'ah) venerate the three imáms 'Alí, Ḥasan, and Ḥusain; they execrate the memory of the three successors of the Prophet; to wit, Abú-Bakr, 'Umar, and 'Usmán.

The masjid of Muḥammad is at Makka; of 'Alí, at Najuf, near Kúfa; of Ḥusain, at Kerbela, near the ruins of Babylon.

The orthodox Mussulmán was ordered to make a pilgrimage to Makka at least once in his life. Hárunu-r-rashíd visited Makkah nine times, and spent (£700,000) on the way. Ibráhím Adham, who had abandoned the throne of Khurásán, spent twelve years on the pilgrimage, in consequence of the number of genu-flections which he had vowed to perform.

The Ka'ba, at Makka, is a square building protecting a black stone, which is said to be one of the precious stones of paradise, which fell to the earth with Adam. The angel Jibrá'il brought it to Ibráhím when he was re-building the Ka'ba. The stone is set in silver in the S.E. corner, seven spans above the ground; it was originally white as snow, but has become superficially black—either by the touch of a menstruous woman or by the kisses of numberless pilgrims; it is said to be lighter than water.

The pilgrims, free from sin and impurity, have to circulate seven times around the Ka'ba. The first three circuits should be at a quick pace, and the last four slowly. As they pass the stone it is incumbent to kiss it, or to touch it with the hand, which should immediately be applied to the lips.

Chief of the head-exalting ones, and crown of the great ones!—

The world will boast, in the time of his justice.

- 135 If a person comes from tumult into shelter,  
He has no shelter-place, save this country (Shíráz).

Happiness for the door (of Abú-Bakr), like the old house (Ka'ba)!

From every broad road around it, men come.

I saw not such a country, and treasure, and throne  
Which is a bequest to the child, and to the young man, and  
to the old. *Qudr*

The style and title of the ceremony is—

ṭawáf-i-baytu-lláhí-l-harám.

With the Persians the pilgrimage to the shrine of Ḥusain is more popular than that to Makka, which is in the hands of their opponents, the *Sunnís* (Turks).

From all parts of Persia, bodies (often in an advanced state of decomposition) are brought to Kerbela.

It is allowable, for those who cannot make the pilgrimage, to get a substitute. There are men whose sole occupation is to make the journey for others.

The deaths of Ḥasan and Ḥusain are commemorated during the first ten days of the Muḥarram.

The play is acted on a stage: when the audience has been worked up into passionate grief, it is not unusual for men to rush through the streets, cutting themselves with knives, and crying "Ḥasan! Ḥusain!" The acting usually takes place in a tent called a takiyá.

The Shí'ahs only believe the interpretations of the Kūrán given by 'Alí, Ḥusain, and the next seven lineal descendants of the Prophet, who form their nine imáms. They do not call the Sunnís infidels, but refuse them the appellation of "al mumín," the faithful.

- 136 As the roads to the house of the Ka'ba are open, and men come from every quarter for the sake of performing Ḥajj, even so the door of King Abú-Bakr is open, and men, for the sake of justice and repelling of their needs, are present in his presence.

- 137 The bequest of treasure to children, who are fond of gold and silver, of country to youths desirous of renown, and of throne to wise old men versed in state affairs, they have assigned.

The one sorrowful on account of a grief came not to him,  
On whose heart he placed not a plaster.

He (Abú-Bakr) is a seeker of good, and hopeful (of good) :  
Oh God ! fulfil the hope that he has.

140 A corner of his hat on the highest Heaven,—  
Yet, from humility, his head on the ground.

If the beggar supplicates,—it is his nature ;  
Humility from the neck-exalting ones is good.

If an inferior falls (in humility) it is proper ;  
The superior prostrate (in humility) is a man of God.

The recollection of his grace is not concealed ;  
Nay, the clamour of his liberality travels in the world.

A wise man of happy disposition like him,  
The world, so long as it was a world, recollects not.

145 In his age, thou dost not see a sorrowing one,  
Who complains of the injustice of the one of strong  
grasp.

No one has seen this custom, and order, and regulation :  
King Firídún, with the majesty that he had, saw not this.

On that account, his dignity before God is great ;  
Because by his might, the hand of the weak ones is  
strong.

Some say that " wakf " signifies—*dastína*, a wrist-ornament. The couplet would then mean—that country, treasure, and throne, were the adornment and boast of child, youth, and old men.

142 The superior is humble only from fear of God.

143 " Kí " here signifies—*balki*.

146 Firídún was a king, who reigned over Persia in 750 B.C. He placed in bonds King Zāhhák, who was notorious for cruelty.

He so spreads his shadow over a world,  
That an old man fears not a Rustam.

In every age, men of the violence of time,  
 And of the revolution of the skies,—groan.

150 Oh great monarch ! in thy just age,  
 No one complains in respect to time.

In thy time, I behold the peace of the people ;  
 After thee, I know not (what will be) the end of the  
 people.

It is also by reason of thy fortune of happy ending,  
 That the date of Sa'dí is in thy era.

So long as the moon and sun are in the sky,  
 In this book, remembrance of thee is eternal.

If kings have gathered a good name,  
 They have learned a good way of life from former kings.

155 Thou, in the administration of thy own kingdom,  
 Surpassed former kings.

Alexander, with a wall of brass and stone,  
Confined the way of Ya,júj from the world.

Thy barrier against Ya,júj-kufr is of gold ;  
 It is not brass, like the wall of Alexander.

156 "Ya,júj" and "Ma,júj" signify—Gog and Magog ; they represent the descendants of Japhet, son of Noah ; they lived in cities to the north of Kohistán, whence they were wont to issue and oppress the neighbouring nations. Alexander the Great built a wall one hundred farsangs in length between two mountains, and so confined them. See the Sikandar-Náma, by Nizámí, Discourse 13, couplet 49.

157 "Ya,júj Kufr," or Changez Khán. King Atábuk made peace with him, by paying money, so that the Muslims of Shíráz obtained safety from his tyranny. The Author gives pre-excellence to his praised one, Apú-Bakr.

That eloquent one—who, in security and justice,  
Utters not thy praise,—let him not have a tongue!

Well done! The sea of gift and mine of liberality!  
Because the implorer for aid is existent from thy existence.

160 I consider the qualities of the King beyond computation;  
Within this narrow plain of the book, they are not  
    , contained.

If Sa'dí writes all thy good qualities,  
He will assuredly make another book.

I desist from thanks for such liberality;  
It is indeed better, that I should spread forth the hand of  
    prayer:—

May the world be to thy desire, and Heaven thy friend!  
May the Creator of the World be thy guardian!

Thy lofty star has illumined a world;  
The declination of thy star has burned the enemy.

165 Of the revolution of Time let there not be grief to thee!  
And of reflection, let there not be dust (of grief) on thy  
    heart!

Because a single grief, on the heart of kings,  
Disturbs the heart of a world.

May thy heart and territory be tranquil and prosperous!  
May confusion be far from thy kingdom!

May thy body be always (sound) like thy true religion (of  
    Islám)!  
May the heart of thy enemy be sluggish, like deliberation!

May thy inward parts, by the strengthening of God, be  
    joyful!  
May thy heart, and religion, and territory be prosperous!

- 170 May the World-Creator have mercy on thee !  
 Whatever more I may say is empty talk and wind.

This indeed is enough from the Glorious Omnipotent One,  
 That the grace of thy welfare is on the increase.

(King) Sa'd, the son of Zangí, departed not with pain from  
 the world ;

When he begot a renowned successor, like thee (Muham-  
 mad Sa'd).

This branch, from that pure stock (Sa'd, son of Zangí), is  
 not wonderful ;

Because his soul is on the summit (of paradise), and his  
 body in the dust (of the grave).

Oh God ! On that renowned tomb (of Sa'd, son of Zangí),  
 By Thy grace, let the rain of mercy fall !

- 175 If of Sa'd, son of Zangí, an example and recollection  
 remain,—

May Heaven be the Protector of Sa'd, son of Abú-Bakr !

---

Atábak Muhammad, a king of good fortune,  
 Lord of crown, and Lord of throne.

A youth of fresh fortune, enlightened mind ;  
In fortune, young ; in deliberation, old.

---

- 172 Zangí was the grandfather of Abú-Bakr ; Sa'd, the son of Zangí,  
 was the father of Abú-Bakr, who was King of Persia, in the time of the  
 poet Sa'dí. There was another Sa'd, who was the son of Abú-Bakr.  
 Vide couplet 175.
- 175 "Atábak" signifies—an instructor. Sa'd, son of Zangí, was instructor  
 to Sultán Sanja, of Shíráz ; one night the Sultán, in a state of intoxica-  
 tion, gave the sovereignty of the country of Shíráz to Sa'd, son of Zangí.  
 After the death of Sanjar, Sa'd and his heirs were called Atábak.
- 176 Muhammad was the son of that Abú-Bakr ; they used to call him  
 Muhammad Sa'd. From couplet 176 to 190 is in praise of Muhammad  
 Sa'd, son of Abú-Bakr, son of Sa'd son of Zangí.

In wisdom, great; and in spirit, lofty;  
In arm, strong; and in heart, sensible.

Oh happy fortune of the mother of Time!  
Who cherishes such a son in her bosom.

180 With the hand of liberality, he took away the water (of  
reputation) of the river:

In exaltation, he took the place of the Pleiades.

Bravo! may the eye of Fortune be open (joyous) on thy  
face,

Oh chief of monarchs, neck exalting!

The oyster, that thou dost see full of pearl-grains,  
Has not that value that one pearl-grain has.

Thou art that hidden (rare) pearl of one grain;  
Because, thou art the ornament of the house of the  
kingdom.

Oh God! preserve him by Thy grace:  
Keep him from injury and the evil eye.

185 Oh God! make him renowned in every horizon:  
Make him precious, by the grace of devotion.

Keep him a dweller in justice and piety;  
Fulfil his wish in this world and the next.

Let there not be grief to thee on account of the hateful  
enemy!

Let there not be injury to thee, from the revolution of the  
world!

---

180 He made the river ashamed by his liberality, and diminished the  
splendour of the Pleiades by his grandeur.

182 "Yak dána" signifies — a jewel, incomparable, without equal, and  
unrivalled.

187 In some places "tá" is replaced by "ash."



The tree of paradise like thee brings forth fruit :  
The son fame-seeking ; the father fame-possessing.

Know that welfare is a stranger of that household  
Who are evil speakers of this household.

<sup>190</sup> Bravo ! Religion and knowledge. Bravo ! justice and  
equity.  
Bravo ! country and government.— May it always be  
lasting !

---

## CHAPTER I.

## ON JUSTICE, EQUITY, AND ADMINISTRATION OF GOVERNMENT.

- 1 The beneficences of God are not contained in the imagination ;

What service does the tongue of praise offer ?

Oh God do thou—this king (Abú-Bakr son of Sa'd), the  
 . poor man's friend,

Since the case of the people is in his protection,—

Keep long established over the head of the people ;  
 By the grace of devotion, keep his heart alive (fresh).

Keep his tree of hope fruitful ;  
 His head green, and his face, with mercy, fair.

- 5 Oh Sa'dí ! go not in the way of dissimulation (in regard to  
 the King's praise) ;

If thou hast honesty, bring and come.

1 In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓum couplets 1 to 21 are omitted.

5 According to the demands of truth, direct to goodness the Poet addresses himself.

Thou (Sa'dí) art a stage-recogniser, and the King a road-traveller :

Thou art a speaker of truth ; and the King, the bearer of truths.

What necessity that nine thrones of the sky,  
Thou dost place below the foot of (the King) Kizil-Arsalán.

Say not :—place thy foot of honour on the Heavens.  
Say :—place the face of sincerity in the dust.

Place, in devotion, the face on the threshold (of God) ;  
Because this is the highway of the righteous.

- 10 If thou (Abú-Bakr) art a slave of God, place thy head on  
this door (of God) ;  
Place, from off thy head, the cap of lordship.

At the Court of the Order-giver possessed of Majesty,  
Bewail, like a darwesh, before a rich and powerful man.

When thou dost perform thy devotions, put not on the  
kingly raiment ;  
Like the poor darwesh, bring forth a cry,

Saying :—“ Oh Omnipotent One ! Thou art powerful ;  
“ Thou art strong ; Thou art the darwesh-cherisher.

6 “ Manzil shinás ” is a spiritual guide, or one who knows God.

7 The following couplet was composed by the poet Zahir-fariyábí, whose patron was King Kizil Arsalán :—

“ Reflection places beneath its foot nine thrones of the sky,  
So that it may kiss the stirrup of Kizil Arslán.”

The poet Sa'dí, in praising Abú-Bakr, says What need to say so much ?  
because in saying so, pride and arrogance are found, and pride is the  
mark of misfortune.

12 Let Ritualists observe this passage.

" I (Abú-Bakr) am neither a monarch, nor an order-giver ;  
 " I am one of the beggars of this Court.

15 " What springs forth from the power of my conduct,  
 " Unless the power of Thy grace is my friend ?

" Give to me the means of liberality and goodness ;  
 " And, if not,—what goodness can come from me to any-  
 " one ?

" Oh God ! keep me on the work of goodness ;  
 " Otherwise, no work can come from me."

At night, like the beggars, pray with ardour,  
 If, by day, thou dost exercise sovereignty.

The obstinate ones (courtiers) are at thy door, loin girt ;  
 Thou (shouldst be thus)—thy head on the threshold of  
 devotion.

20 Oh, excellent !—for us slaves, the Lord-God ;  
 For the lord a slave, duty-performing.

---

They relate a story of the great men of the faith,  
 Recognisers of the truth of the essence of truth,

---

19 " Gardan-kashán " signifies — men possessed of power, and arrogant.  
 " Kamar-bastan " signifies — to choose, to be of stout heart in deeds, to  
 show solicitude in work.

21 " 'Ilmu-l-yakín " is—proof of the certainty of a thing is obtained to  
 such a degree that the doubter is incapable of entertaining doubt, though  
 the thing itself may not be viewed as—

The conception of the form of fire from smoke.

" 'Ainu-l-yakín " is—the viewing of a thing is obtained so that a person  
 sees the form of fire with his eye. This yakín is superior to the first.

" Hakku-l-yakín " signifies—the effacing of one thing by another in  
 such a way that, apparently, it becomes that other thing itself, as—

Iron in the fire of the smith's stove appears exactly like the fire  
 itself.

The "Nineteenth Century" magazine, October 1878, "Faith and Veri-

As follows :—A pious man sate on a panther ;  
Snake in hand, he urged his long, pleasant paced steed.

One said to him :—" Oh man of the way of God !  
Guide me to this road by which thou didst go.

" What didst thou, that the rending animal became obedient to thee ?

" That the seal-ring of good fortune went to thy name ? "

25 He said :—" If the panther and snake be submissive to me,  
" And if (also) the elephant and vulture,—be not astonished.

" Do thou also from the order of the Ruler (God) twist not thy neck,

" So that no one, from thy order, may twist his neck."

When the ruler is obedient to God,  
God is his Protector and Friend.

It is impossible when He loves thee,  
That He will leave thee in the power of an enemy.

fication," page 677 :—" A fact only is proved when the evidence can leave us no room to doubt; when it cannot be denied without absurdity ; when it becomes a necessity of the reason that we give our full assent to it." Page 678 :—" This great scientific axiom is an utterly false one." " It is in diametrical opposition to truth." " It is only the meanest and most subordinate truths that are capable of being proved at all."

24 That like Salaimán thou didst become master of ravening beasts.

25 In some places the following occurs :—

I saw one, in the bed of a river (or, from the plain of the city of Rúd-bár),

Who came towards me riding on a panther :

Such terror, on account of that state, sate on (overpowered) me,

That fearing bound the feet of my going.

Smiling, he took his hand to his lip,

Saying—Oh Sa'dí ! at whatever thou didst see be not astonished.

This is the road, and turn not thy face from the way ;  
Place thy foot (on this road), and obtain the object which  
thou dost desire.

- 30 Advice of a person is profitable to a person,—to him,  
To whom the saying of Sa'dí is agreeable.

---

I have heard that, at the time of the agony of the soul (the  
last breath),  
(King) Naushíraván (the Just) thus spoke to Hurmuz (his  
son),

Saying :—" Be observant of the heart of the poor  
" Be not in the desire of thy own ease.

" A person rests not within thy territory,  
" When thou dost seek thy own ease, and no more.

" In the opinion of the wise, it is not approved—  
" The shepherd asleep, and the wolf among the sheep.

- 35 " Go : protect the poor and needy one,  
" Because, the king is the crown-holder for the sake of his  
subjects.

" The subject is like the root, and the king the tree ;  
" Oh son ! the tree is strong by reason of the root.

" So long as thou canst, wound not the heart of the  
people ;  
" But, if thou dost,—thou dost pluck up thy own roots.

- 
- 29 " Sharí'at," the laws of Muḥammad.  
" Taríkat," the way (to God).  
" Ḥaḳíkat," the truth (of existence of God).  
" Ma'rífat," the knowledge (of God).  
} By these four means, a  
man may find God.

33 In the 'Ikd-i-manẓúm, this couplet is omitted.

35 In some places :—

Thou hast slept cool, in the retired place, half a day ;  
Say,—to the traveller, burn in the heat outside.

" If a straight road (of safety) is necessary for thee—  
 " The way of the pious is hope and fear.

" The disposition of man is towards wisdom, *Amle*  
 " In the hope of goodness, and fear of wickedness."

40 If thou didst find these two <sup>?</sup> doors (hope and fear) in the  
 King,  
 Thou didst obtain shelter in the territory of his kingdom."

(The King) brings a gift to the hopeful one,  
 In hope of the gift (of pardon) of the Creator of the World.

" The injury of persons is not pleasing to him (the king),  
 " Who fears lest injury should come to his kingdom.

" And if there is not this disposition, in his nature,  
 " There is not the perfume of ease in that territory.

" If thou art foot-bound (by wife and family), accept contentment;  
 " But, if thou art a single horseman (solitary), take thy own desire.

45 " Seek not plenteousness in that land and region,  
 " Where thou dost see the subjects of the king sorrowful.

38 After the first line, understand :—have fear of wickedness and hope of goodness. See the second line of couplet 39.

39 The Šúfis have said:—(*Arabic*.) "Find out whatever desire there is in hope and fear."

And again:—(*Arabic*.) "Fear and hope are to man, as wings to a bird."

In the 'Ik̄d-i-manẓúm, couplets 39 to 41 are omitted.

43 "Bú,c" (*lit.* a smell) signifies—a portion, a share, wish.

44 That is:—

In thy hand, there is nothing although thou art a king. Moreover, affairs are in the hand of God. Hence thou also hast hope and fear.

“ Fear not the proud haughty ones ;  
 “ Fear that one, who fears God.

“ In a dream, he sees the territory of another populous,  
 “ Who keeps the heart of the people of his country distressed.

“ From violence come ruin and ill-fame ;  
 “ The prudent man reaches to the profundity of this speech.

“ It is not proper with injustice to slay the peasants,  
 “ Who are the shelter and support of the kingdom.

50 “ For thy own sake preserve the villagers ;  
 “ Because, the labourer of happy heart executes more work (for his master).

“ It is not manliness to do ill to that one (the villager),  
 “ From whom, thou mayst have experienced much benefit (in tribute).”

---

I have heard that King Khusrau said to (his son) Shírwiya  
 At that time when his eyes slept (rested) from seeing (at  
 the time of death),—

“ In that state be, so that whatever resolution thou mayst make,

“ Thou mayst consider the peace of the peasant.

---

46 In the text, in the second line, a negative is wrongly inserted. See the Sikandar Náma, Discourse 34, couplet 41—

In business, I have fear of none,  
 Save that one, who is God-fearing.

51 The splendid clothes and delicate food of kings, and other delights of life, are purchased with the gold of the villagers.

52 Khusrau Parvez, son of Hurmuz, reigned 590–625 A.D. He was the lover of Shírín. Shírwiya, in order to increase his sensual appetite, took a medicine which proved to be poison: he reigned six months.



“ Be sure, so long as thou dost not turn thy head from  
equity and judgment,  
“ That men will not turn aside their feet, from thy power.

55 “ The peasant flies from the tyrant ;  
“ He makes his bad repute, a stock story in the world.

“ Much time passes not, that his own foundation,  
“ That one plucked up, who laid a bad foundation (of  
tyranny).

“ The enemy, skilful with the sword, lays waste,  
“ Not so much as, the smoke (grief) of the heart of an old  
woman.

“ The lamp (of grief) that the widow-woman lighted up,—  
“ Thou mayst often have seen that it burned a city.

“ Who, in the world, is more favoured than that one,  
“ Who with justice, in sovereignty, lived ?

60 “ When the time of his travelling from this world arrives,  
“ (The people of the world) send mercy to his tomb.

“ Since bad and good men pass away (die),  
“ It is best indeed that they connect thy name with good-  
ness (and bless thee).

“ Appoint the God-fearing one over the peasant ;  
“ Because, the abstinent one is the architect of the country.

“ That liver-eater of the people is thy enemy,  
“ Who seeks thy profit, in the injury of the people.

“ Government is a fault in the hand of those persons,  
“ From whose power, the hands (of the people) are (up-  
lifted in prayer) before God.

65 " The cherisher of good sees not evil ;  
 " When thou dost cherish evil, thou art the enemy of thy  
 own life.

" Exercise not retribution against the despoiler by (con-  
 fiscation of) his property ;

" But, it is proper to bring forth (to destroy) his root from  
 the foundation.

" Exercise not patience with the agent of the friend of  
 tyranny ;

" Since, on account of his fatness (from extortion) it is  
 proper to flay his skin.

" It is also proper, *at first*, to cut off the wolf's head,

" Not at the time when he tore in pieces the sheep of men."

How well said the captive merchant

When the robbers gathered around him with arrows !

70 " Inasmuch as courage comes from highwaymen,

" Whether the men of the army, or a troop of women, what  
 matter ?"

66 In the second line, " ki " may have the force of—because ; *or*, nay.

" Málsh " signifies—punishment.

" Málsh " signifies—his property, as given in the text.

67 " Zúlm dost " signifies—one who loves tyranny.

Exercise not patience ; nay, dismiss him, because I will plunder this  
 tyranny-practising one, after that he has become fat, and amassed by  
 oppression much wealth from the peasant, and will take his plunder from  
 him.

Again :—

Exercise not patience ; because it is necessary to flay this tyranny-  
 practising one. If not, having become bold, he will exercise on all still  
 greater tyranny.

68 In the 'Ik̄d-i-manzúm, couplets 69 to 264 are omitted.

70 The army should repel robbers ; when it does not exercise sufficient  
 bravery to do this, the author asks—what difference is there between it  
 and a troop of women ?

The gist of this speech is :—That a king should protect merchants  
 and travellers.

The great king, who injured the merchants,  
Shut the door of well being on the (people of the) city and  
the army.

How may wise men again go there,  
When they hear the rumour of bad custom?

Are a good name and favourable reception necessary to  
thee?—

Hold in esteem merchants and envoys.

*great ones*  
Merchants heartily cherish travellers;  
Because, they carry their good name to the world.

75 That kingdom soon becomes ruined,  
From which, the injured heart becomes a traveller.

Be the acquaintance of the foreigner, and friend of the  
traveller;

Because the traveller is one who hawks about a good  
name.

Hold dear the guest, and precious the traveller;  
But also be on guard from injury from them.

To beware of the stranger is good;  
Because, possibly, he may be an enemy in the guise of a  
friend.

75 In some places:—

When the king broke faith, in whom may he seek faith?  
When the villagers fled, from whom will he seek fame?  
What goodness, does that one-without-purity expect,  
In whose rear are curses?  
Neither poverty, nor helplessness;  
Neither rebuke, nor oppression—at once.  
When memory of former kings comes to thee,  
Recite that same writing after thy own time.  
They possessed this very desire, and pride, and pleasure  
In the end, they departed, and abandoned the world.

Advance the rank of thy own old friends ;  
Because, treachery never comes from the cherished one.

80 When thy servant becomes old,  
Forget not the right of his years.

If old age has bound the hand of his service ;  
Yet, thou hast power, in respect to liberality.

I heard that Sháhpúr heaved a sigh,  
When Khusrau drew the pen on (cancelled) his pension.

When, from want of food his state became distressed,  
He wrote this tale to the king,

As follows :—" Oh king, clime-spreader, in justice !  
" If I remain not (die still), thou dost remain in excellence.

85 " When I spent for thee my youth,  
" Drive me not from before thee, in the time of old age."

The foreigner, whose head is intent on strife,  
Injure not ; but, expel him from the country.

If thou dost not become angry with him, it is proper ;  
Because, his own bad nature is the enemy, in pursuit of  
him.

And, if Persia be his native country,  
Send him not to Sin'án, Slavonia, or Turkey.

Even there (in Persia) give him not respite, until the mid-  
day meal (slay him) ;  
It is not proper to establish a calamity on any one.

---

82 " Sháhpúr " was the attendant, who used to be employed as messenger between " Khusrau Parvez " and his mistress " Shírin."

88 Şin'án is a town in Yaman, in Arabia ; Saqláb is a country in the north.

89 " Chásht " is one watch out of the four watches into which the day (not night) is divided.

90 Because they say :—May that country be overturned,  
Since such men come out of it !

If thou dost give service (place and rank) recognise the  
beneficent man ;  
Because, the poor man has no fear of the king.

When the poor man lowers his neck to the shoulder (in  
humility),  
Only lamentation proceeds from him.

When the inspector has not two hands of rectitude,  
It is necessary to appoint an examiner over him.

And if he (the examiner) agrees with his heart,  
Pluck away service from the inspector and his examiner.

95 The God-fearing man, fidelity-displaying, is necessary ;  
Hold him not faithful, who fears thee (and not God).

The faithful <sup>one</sup> is necessary, fearing the Ruler (God) ;  
Not eminence of the minister, nor reproof, nor ruin.

Scatter (thy money), and reckon, and sit at leisure ;  
Because, thou dost not see one faithful out of a hundred.

Two persons of the same nature, old, of the same pen  
(education),  
It is not proper to send together to one place.

How dost thou know that they may become mutual helper  
and friend ?  
This one may be a thief, the other a confidant.

92 "Faro burdan gardan ba dosh" signifies—to practise humility ; to reflect ; to obey.

95 See couplet 46.

When a man is in doubt as to how much he possesses, he spreads out his long purse (the scrip suspended at the girdle), and counts his money.

99 "Ham dast gardan" signifies — to become concordant.

100 When thieves have fear and terror of one another,  
A Kárawán goes safe, in the midst of them.

One whom thou didst dismiss from dignity,—  
Forgive his crime, when some time elapses.

To accomplish the desire of the hopeful  
Is better than to break (the bonds) of a thousand fettered  
ones.

If the pillar of the office of the scribe  
Falls, he cuts not the rope of hope.

The just monarch, with his subjects, *Amir*  
Becomes angry like a father with a son.

105 Sometimes, he strikes him so that he becomes sorrowful;  
Sometimes, he makes water (flow) from his pure eyes.

When thou dost exercise gentleness, the enemy becomes  
bold;  
But, if thou art an anvil, he becomes wearied of thee.

Severity and mildness together are best,  
Like the vein-striker (bleeder), who is surgeon and plaster-  
placer.

Be generous, and pleasant tempered, and forgiving;  
Even as God scatters (favour) over thee, do thou scatter  
over the people.

102 The second line may be rendered:—

Is better than to subdue a thousand fortresses.

103 If the official be dismissed from office, he despairs not of being  
reinstated.

108 As God ordered:—(*Arabic.*) "Do good as God has done good to thee."

No one came into the world, who remained,  
Save that one, whose good name remained.

110 That one died not, after whom there remained—  
Bridge, or masjid, or khán, or guest-house.

Every one, behind whom, a token remained not,—  
The tree of his existence brought not forth fruit.

If he departed (from this world) and the marks of his well-  
doing remained not,  
It is not fit to chaunt, after his death,—“ Al hamd ! ”

When thou dost wish that thy name may be eternal,  
Conceal not the good name of the great ones.

After thy own time (death) call to mind that same descrip-  
tive picture,  
That, after the age of former kings, thou didst behold.

115 One took away a good name from the world ;  
The bad custom of the other remained behind him for  
ever.

109 In some places :—

Whosoever came into the world will be one who passes away ;  
He who is permanent and lasting will be God.

110 “ Khán ” signifies — Kárawán-house.

“ Mihmán saráe ” signifies — the place where they give food to the poor  
and necessitous.

112 “ Al hamd ! ” refers to the Súra fátiha of the Kúrán. It here signifies  
—du’á,e khair.

114 In some places :—

They possessed this very desire, and blandishment, and joy ;  
In the end, they departed (from the world) and passed away.

The picture, regarding their lifelessness and namelessness, which after  
the death of former kings thou didst see on the tablet of possibility—  
behold that same picture (of non-existence) on the page of Time after  
thy own epoch. That is—like former ones, thou also wilt become name-  
less and traceless.

With the ear of approval, listen not to a person's injury ;  
But, if the speech comes probe its depth.

Accept the excuse of forgetfulness of the sinner ;  
When he asks for protection, give protection.

If a sinner comes to thy shelter ;  
It is not proper to slay him, at the first fault.

When once they uttered advice, and the sinner heard not ;  
Punish him, the second time, with imprisonment and  
bonds.

120 And, if advice and bonds are of no advantage to him ;  
He is an impure tree ; pluck up his roots.

When anger comes to thee, on account of a person's crime,  
Reflect much on his punishment ;

Because, it is easy to break the ruby of Badakhshán.  
Broken,—it is not possible to fasten it together again.

*king & the delaying of punishment*  
A certain one came from the sea of 'Ummán,  
Much sea and plain travelled ;

Arabia and Turkistan, and Majanderan, and Turkey seen ;  
Sciences of every class of men, in his pure spirit ;

125 World travelled, and knowledge gathered ;  
Travelled and society-versed ;

In form strong, like a large-bolled tree ;  
But very weak without leaf.

Two hundred rags, one on the other stitched ;  
He in the midst burnt from their heat.

---

122 Badakhshán is a country between Hindústán and Khurásán ; in that  
place is a mine of rubies and gold. Some say that there is no mine of  
rubies, but that they bring rubies to Badakhshán and call them rubies  
of Badakhshán.



By a river-bank, he entered a city ;  
A great one (was) king in that locality.

Who had a disposition reflecting on good name ;  
Who held the head of submission, at the foot of the dar-  
wesh.

- 30 The servants of the king washed,  
In a bath, his head and body from the dust of the road.

When he placed his head on the threshold of the king,  
Lauding, he placed his hand in his bosom.

He entered the hall of the great king,  
Saying :—" May thy fortune be young, and power thy  
slave ! "

The great king said :—" Whence didst thou come ?  
" What happened to thee that thou camest to me ?

" In this territory, what sawest thou of good and bad ?  
" Oh one of good name and good disposition ! Say ! "

- 35 He replied :—" Oh lord of the face of the earth !  
" May God be thy helper, and Fortune thy friend !

" In this country, I went not one stage,  
" During which, I saw a single heart calamity-distressed.

" For the king, this very kingdom and ornament (of  
justice) is sufficient,  
" That—he is not pleased with injury done to a single  
person.

" I saw not one, head heavy with wine ;  
" Indeed I also saw the wine taverns desolate."

He spoke, and expanded his skirt of jewels of speech,  
 With such a grace, that the king extended his sleeve in  
 rapture (was astonished).

140 The excellent speech of the man was pleasing to the king;  
 He called him near to himself and did him honour.

Gave to him gold and jewels and thanks for auspicious  
 arrival;  
 Inquired of him his original birthplace.

Whatever the king asked of past events, he told;  
 In propinquity to the king, he surpassed other persons.

The king was in talk with his own heart,  
 Saying:—"I may commit to him the chief dignity of  
 wazír-ship,

"But by degrees, so that the assembly of courtiers  
 "May not laugh at my judgment, on account of negligence.

145 "First it will be necessary to prove him <sup>in</sup> wisdom;  
 "To exalt his rank, according to his skill."

From the power of grief, there may be burdens on the  
 heart of that one,  
 Who, untried, performs deeds.

When the Kází, with thought, writes the decree,  
 He becomes not ashamed of turban-wearers (nobles,  
 learned and pious men).

139 "Astín bar afshándan" signifies—to be astonished.

147 "Sijjil" is the written degree, in which the judge writes the order of  
 decision with the reasons.

Glance (at the butt), when thou hast the arrow-notch in  
the bowstring-seizer, <sup>نيس</sup>  
Not, at that time, when thou didst shoot the arrow from  
the hand.

Like Joseph in rectitude and discretion, (for) a person—  
Many years are necessary (in order) that he may become  
'azíz (king). <sup>مراعاة</sup>

150 So long as much time passes not,  
One cannot reach a person's profundity.

<sup>نفس</sup>  
The king discovered his good qualities of every kind;  
He was a man wise and of pure religion.

The king saw his good way of life, and illumined  
judgment;  
His considerate speech, and capability of man-appraising. <sup>مقدار</sup>

Considered him in judgment better and greater than the  
great ones;  
Placed him above the power of his own wazír.

He acquired such skill, and knowledge of work,  
That he wounded not a heart by his order and prohibition.  
<sup>امر و نهی</sup>

155 He brought a kingdom beneath the (sway of his) pen;  
Because, from him, sorrow came not to a single person.

<sup>ال</sup>  
He closed the tongue of all word-seizers;  
Because an evil thing issued not from his hand.

---

148 "Shist" signifies—the bowstring-seizer; it is like a ring, made of  
bone; they place it on the thumb at the time of shooting and pull the  
bowstring with it.

149 "'Azíz" was the title of the wazír of Egypt.

The envious one, who beheld not (in this conduct) one grain  
of (deceit), <sup>بد تو حساب</sup>  
Trembled, on account of his work, like wheat on the frying-  
pan.

From his illumined mind, the country acquired light;  
 Grief, on account of the new wazír, seized the old minister.

He, in respect to that wise one, saw not a single breach (of  
 observance)

On account of which, he could express reproach.

160 The faithful one is a basin, and the evil one an ant;  
 The ant cannot, by force, make a breach in the basin (when  
 within it).

Two sun-shaped slaves of the king  
 Used to be always loin-girt (in service).

Two pure forms like "húr" and "parí"  
 Like the sun and moon, free from a third likeness.

Two forms, of which thou wouldst have said—one is not  
 greater (than the other),  
 Made themselves equal (in reflection) in the mirror.

The words of the wise one (the new wazír), sweet of  
discourse,  
 Took the heart of those two (youths) box trees (in stature).

165 When they saw that the qualities of his disposition were  
 good,  
 They became, in inclination, his well-wishers and friends.

The inclination of humanity <sup>bashar</sup> (love) also affected him;—  
 Not an inclination (lust) like that of short-sighted ones for  
evil. <sup>ba sharr</sup> k'atāh - ḡī.ān

160 Even so, the evil one cannot prevail over the upright one.

He used to possess news of (enjoy) ease at that time,  
When he used to glance in their faces.

When thou dost wish that thy power may remain high,  
 Oh Sir! attach not thy heart to the smooth-faced ones.

سارہ دوانی  
 And although desire (lust) itself be not present;  
 Exercise caution because there is fear of loss.

170 The old minister in respect to this obtained a little information;  
 In villainy, he carried this story to the king,

Saying:—"I know not this new wazír, what they call him, nor who he is,

"In this country, he will not live in chastity. ✓

"Those who have made journeys live without fear, لا ابل

"Because they are not cherished by the country and government.

"I heard that he has an affection for the slaves;

"He is a treachery-approver and lust worshipper. ~~Imp.~~

"It is not fit that such a dissipated, black-faced one \

"Should bring bad repute to the halls of the king.

175 "Perhaps, I forget the king's favour,

"Because, I see ruin and am silent.

fatihy

"On suspicion, one cannot quickly speak;

"So long as I was uncertain, I spoke not.

"One of my followers observed

"That he had one of them in his bosom.

171 "Sámán" signifies—ease, rest, repose, innocence, chastity.

174 "Khíra rúe" signifies—shameless, saucy-eyed.

"I this have said ; now, oh king of ripe judgment !  
 "As I tried, do thou also try."

• He explained the matter in the worst manner,  
 May there not be a happy day to the bad man !—

180 When the evil one obtained power over a small matter,  
 He burned the vitals of the great ones in the fire.

One can light a fire with fragments ;  
 After that, one can burn the large tree.

This speech made the king so wrath,  
 That his sigh came forth from the heart to the mouth.

Anger, in respect to the blood of the darwesh (new wazír),  
 held sway ;  
 But, tranquillity held the hand in front (forbade)

Because to slay the cherished one is not manliness,  
 Tyranny after justice is coldness.

185 Injure not one cherished by thyself,  
 When he has thy arrow, strike him not with the arrow.

It was not proper to cherish him with wealth.  
 When, with injustice, thou dost desire to drink his blood.

So long as his skill was not certain to thee,  
 In the royal halls, he was not thy associate.

Now, so long as his crime is not certain to thee,  
 Seek not, at the suggestion of an enemy, his injury.

qasad-ash

179 The second line is uttered by the Poet.

185 When kings go a-ravaging and desire to spare any of the inhabitants  
 of the country from rapine, they give to them an arrow, on seeing which  
 the soldiers refrain from plundering.

The king held concealed this secret in his heart ;  
Because, he preserved the saying of the sages.

190 " Oh wise man ! the prison of the secret is the heart,  
" When thou didst speak, it came not back to chains."

In respect to the work of the man, he secretly looked ;  
In the way of the sensible man, he saw defect. *خلل*

When he (the new wazír) suddenly glanced at one of the  
slaves,  
The fairy-cheeked one covertly laughed.

Of two persons, who are soul and sense together,  
The silent lips are telling a tale.

When, by looking (at them), he used to make the eye bold,  
Like the dropsical one of (drinking) the Euphrates, he used  
not to be satiated (of looking). *جلاء*

195 The king's suspicion of evil became confirmed.  
From frenzy, he wished to be enraged with him ;  
But, from right deliberation and perfect judgment  
He said to him, in a whisper :—" Oh, one of good name !

*guiltily* *بأسف*  
" I considered thee sensible ;  
" Held thee faithful to the secrets of the kingdom :

*اسرار*  
" Reckoned thee wise and intelligent ;  
" Regarded not thee shameless and unworthy.

" Such lofty station is not thy place.  
" The sin is mine ; it is not thy fault.

---

192 This couplet describes the nature of the defect mentioned in couplet  
196.

194 " As the one stricken with dropsy becomes not satiated of drinking  
water, so he became not wearied of looking at the youths.

200 "When I cherish one of bad stock, assuredly,  
 "I permit treachery in my house."

• The man-much-knowing raised his head :  
 He thus spoke to King Khusrau, work-understanding :—

"When my skirt is free from crime,  
 "Fear of the villainy of the evil-intent one comes not.

"This thought never passed in my heart :  
 "I know not who said what never chanced to me."

The great king said :—"What I have said to thee,  
 "Enemies will say to thy face.

205 "Thus spoke the old wazír to me ;  
 "What thou dost know, also say ; and, do (what thou  
 canst)."

He laughed, and placed his finger on the lip,  
 Saying :—"What he uttered,—is no wonder.

"The envious one, who sees me in his own place,  
 "Brings on (utters with) his tongue—what, but evil of me?

"I considered him my enemy, that hour,  
 "When Khusrau placed him lower than me.

"When the Sultán places my worth above him,  
 "Knows he not that an enemy is behind me ?

210 "Till the Judgment-day, he will not accept me as a friend,  
 "When he sees that, in my <sup>لایم</sup> honour, is his degradation.

"On this point, I will thee a true tale,  
 "If first to (this) slave thou dost give an ear.

201 In the text, "darád" is an error for "dáram."

206 "Angusht bar lab giriftan" signifies :—

Angusht ba dandán gazídan ; ta'ajjub wa tahrír namúdan ; angusht-i-háirat bar lab giriftan.



"I know not where in a book I have seen,

"That a person in a dream saw Iblís.

"With the stature of a fir-tree, with the countenance of a  
Húr,

"Light, sun-like, burned from his face.

"He went before him and said :—' Oh wonderful ! art thou  
this Iblís ?

" ' There is not an angel with this goodness (of appearance).

215 " ' Since thou hast this face with the beauty of the moon,

" ' Why art thou a stock-story as to ugliness in the world !

" ' They considered thee terrible of face ;

" ' In the bath-room, they painted thee hideous.

" ' Why, in the halls of the king, have they painted thee,

" ' Dejected of face, distorted of hand, ugly, ruined ? '

" ' <sup>ای کرمی کردست و زشت نهاد</sup>  
Shaitán of overturned fortune heard this speech.

" ' In lament, he raised a shout and cry,

" ' Saying :—' Oh, one of good fortune ! that is not my form,

" ' But the pencil is in the hand of an enemy.

" ' I threw out their root (A'dam) from Paradise ;

" ' Now, by reason of malice, they depict me ugly.'

" ' Just so I (the new wazír) have a good name ; but,

" ' For reason, the evil-intent one speaks not good (of me).

" ' The wazír, whose reputation my rank spilled,— <sup>علت</sup>

" ' It is necessary to fly from his deceit to the distance of a  
league. <sup>مگر</sup>

212 In some places :—

A person, in a dream, saw Iblís :

In stature, a cone-bearing tree ; in face, a sun.

"But, I think not of the anger of the king ;

"One without sin is brave in speech.

"If the inspector <sup>مفتش</sup> of measures seizes,—there is sorrow to that one,

"Whose weight of the standard balance-weight is deficient.

25 "When a word comes happily from my pen,

"To me,—of word-seizers, what care ? "

The king remained confounded at his speech : <sup>خیره</sup>

↓ He spread the tip of the hand of Order-Giving,—

—Because the malefactor, by fraud <sup>دشمنی</sup> and eloquence, <sup>زبان</sup>

Becomes not free from a crime which he has (committed)—

26 Saying :—" Assuredly from an enemy, I have not heard this ;

—"Have I not seen thee, in short, with my own eyes ?—

"That, of this crowd of people in my court, <sup>مردم خلعت</sup>

"Thou hast only a glance for these two slaves."

230 The man of eloquence laughed, and said :—

"This speech is right ; it is not proper to conceal the truth. <sup>نه کتمان</sup>

"In this matter there is a subtle point, if thou wilt listen.

—"May thy Order be current, and government strong !—

"Dost thou not see that the darwesh, without resources,

"Looks with regret at the rich ?

سرت  
در

224 "Sang-i-tarázú" is the weight used in weighing.

226 "Sar-i-dast afshándan" signifies — to be angry, to give up, to refuse. Thus :—A person utters a speech, and the person addressed agrees not. He turns the back of his hand towards the speaker, and shakes it in his direction, signifying that he disagrees with him and does not allow the speech to pass.

"The resources of my youth have passed ;

"Life in play and pastime passed.

"Of the appearance of these (two slaves) I have no  
patience ; *shab*

"Because, they are the possessors of the capital of beauty  
and grace. *samaya dānā*

235 "I had even such a rose-coloured face ;

"My limbs were crystal by reason of beauty. *andām*

"In this extremity, it is proper to spin my shroud ; *shab*

"Since my hair is like cotton, and my body like a spindle. *andām*

"I had even such night-coloured ringlets ;

"My coat was tight on the body from delicacy (fatness).

"Two rows of pearls had a place in my mouth,

"Erect like a wall of silver bricks. *shab*

"Now, at the time of speech, glance—

"One by one, like an old city-wall, they have fallen.

40 "Why may I not look with envy at these (two slaves),

"When I bring to memory my ruined (mis-spent) life ?

"Those precious days (of youth) departed from me ;

"Suddenly, this day (of old age) also arrives at an end."

When the wise man pierced this pearl of lustrous truth,  
The king said :—"To speak better than this is impossible."

The king glanced at the nobles,  
Saying :—"Desire not words and truth more beautiful  
than this."

235 "Like crystal,—white and flashing bright ; but we should say, like *ivory*  
rather than *crystal*.

“The glance towards a lovely <sup>منابر</sup> one is lawful, to that one,  
 “Who knows how to utter excuse with such argument.

245 “If I had not in wisdom acted deliberately,  
 “I should have injured him by the speech of an enemy.”

With severity, to carry a light hand to the sword  
 Is to carry the back of the hand of regret to the teeth.

Beware that thou hearest not the speech of the designin  
 man;  
 Because, if thou dost set to work (on his speech), tho  
 wilt become regretful.

The dignity and honour, and property of the one of goo  
 name  
 The king increased, and to the evil speaker (the old wazir  
 he gave rebuke.

By the deliberation of his learned prime-minister, <sup>دستور</sup>  
 His name, in the country, became renowned for goodness.

250 With justice and liberality, years he governed the country  
 He departed (died), but his good name remained.

Such kings, who cherish religion,  
 With the arm of religion (of Islám), carry off the ball c  
 empire. <sup>نوی دولت</sup> <sup>هنگام</sup>

In this age, I see not one of those kings;  
 But if there be, it is Abú-Bakr, son of Sa'di, and no other

Oh King! Thou art the tree of paradise.  
 Because, thou hast flung thy shadow (of justice) to the dis  
 tance of a year's journey.

From fortune of happy <sup>احسن</sup>star, there was to me greed;  
That it might cast the shadow of the Humá's wing over my  
head.

255 Wisdom said :—"The Humá gives power."

(Nay!) if thou dost desire prosperity, come into this shadow  
(of Abú-Bakr).

Oh God! in mercy Thou hast looked;  
Since Thou hast diffused this shadow (of Abú-Bakr) on the  
people.

Slave-like, I am a prayer-utterer for this kingdom:  
Oh God! keep perpetually this shadow (of Abú-Bakr).

It is proper to imprison before slaying; <sup>بیش از کشتن</sup>  
Because, one cannot join the head of the slain one.  
<sup>بیشتر از سر</sup>

The Lord of Command, and Judgment, and Dignity  
Becomes not distressed, on account of the clamour of men.

260 Head full of pride, void of <sup>ghum</sup>patience,— <sup>بها</sup>  
To him, the kingly crown is forbidden.

I say not :—When thou dost fight, keep the foot (firm);  
(But) when thou dost gather anger, keep reason in place.

Whosoever has reason endures;  
Not a wise man is he, whom anger makes subject.  
<sup>Not the kind of wisdom which makes men subjects.</sup>

Like an army, anger rushed from ambush:  
Justice remained not, nor piety, nor religion.

I saw not such a demon (as anger) beneath the sky,  
From whom so many angels fly.

254 The Humá is a fabulous bird, found in the Caucasus. He, on whom  
its shadow falls, arrives at power.

256 Abu-Bakr was a just and liberal monarch.

264 The word "angel" refers to justice, piety, and religion.

265 Is it not a crime to drink water, without the order of the  
 Law of Religion? *Am*  
 But, if by decree of the judge, thou dost shed blood, it is  
 lawful. *معي*

Whomsoever the decree of the Law of Islám gives to  
 destruction,  
 Oh Sir! beware, that thou mayst not have fear of slaying  
 him.

And if thou hast (about thee) followers in his tribe, *tribe*  
 Bestow gifts on them, and cause ease to arrive. *تالان*

It was a crime on the part of the tyrannous man ;  
 What is the crime of his wife and helpless children ?

Thy body is powerful, and army great ;  
 But, into the country of the enemy (of the kings of Islám)  
 urge it not.

270 When, the enemy flies to his lofty citadel, *طاري*  
 Injury arrives to the innocent people of the country.

Look into the affairs of prisoners :  
 It is possible that a guiltless one may be among them.

When a (foreign) merchant died in thy country,  
 It is paltriness to carry thy hand to his property *خسار*

Because, afterwards they will bitterly lament for that mer-  
 chant ;  
 His relations and tribe will openly speak,

Saying :—" The wretched one died in a foreign country ;  
 " The tyrant took away his property that remained."

---

265 Water-drinking is allowable ; but it is a crime to drink it in the auspi-  
 cious month Ramāzan, when it is forbidden by the law of Islám.

Blood-shedding is considered abominable in all religions ; but when  
 the law has decreed it, it is lawful.

- 275 Think of that poor child, without father;  
 And be cautious of the sigh of his sorrowful heart.

(There is) many a good fame of fifty years,—  
 Which one disreputable act treads under foot.

Those of approved acts of everlasting fame  
 Exercised not tyranny over the property of the people.

If he is king over the whole world, أفاق  
 When he takes property from the rich man, he is a beggar.

The noble liberal man dies of poverty; اراد  
 He fills not his belly from the side of the distressed one.

- 280 I heard that a just order-giver  
 Used to have a coat, both surfaces of lining (cheap) material.

One said to him: "Oh Khusrau of happy days!  
 "Sew a coat of brocade of China." بای حسب

He said:—" (Cloth of) this quality is covering and ease;  
 "And thou dost exceed this (rule), it is ornament and  
 decoration. زیر و آستر

"I take not the land tax for the sake, برای  
 "That I may put embellishments on my own body, and  
 throne, and crown.

"If like women, I put ornaments on my body,  
 "How may with manliness I repulse the enemy?

- 285 "A hundred times, I have even greed and desire for it;  
 "But, the treasury is not only for me.

"The treasuries are full for the sake of the army;  
 "They are not for the sake of ornament and decoration."

The soldier, who, on account of his king, is not happy at  
 heart,  
 Watches not the borders of the kingdom.

When the enemy carries off the villager's ass,  
Why does the king enjoy tribute (levied from the people)  
and the tenth part ?

The enemy took away his ass, the king tribute ;  
In respect to that throne and crown, what fortune  
remains ?

290 Violence to the fallen one is not manliness :

وین The mean bird carries off the grain from before the (weak)  
ant.

The peasant is a tree ; if thou dost cherish it, (Oh King-  
Gardener of the kingdom !)  
Thou mayst enjoy the fruit to the desire of the heart of  
thy friends.

With mercilessness, pluck it not out with root and fruit ;  
Because, the fool does injury to his own body. حیف

Those persons enjoy the fruit of youth and fortune,  
Who act not severely to their inferiors.

If an inferior becomes distressed  
Beware of his complaining to God.

295 When it is possible to take the country with gentleness,  
وین In contest, bring not forth blood from a single pore of the  
body. می دانم

In the name of manliness ! because, the country of the  
{ whole earth } ~~is not~~  
وین Is not worth one drop of bood that trickles on the earth.

290 "Uftáda" signifies—weak and faulty.

The weak ant, with great labour, collects his store of food.

294 "Az páe dar ánadán" signifies—"ájiz shudán ; saķat shudán ;  
uftádan."

295 "Masámi"="bíkl-i-múe."



I heard that King Jamshíd of happy nature  
Wrote on a stone, at a fountain head.

“ At this fountain, many like us took rest ;  
“ They departed (in death), just as the eyes twinkled.

“ With manliness and force, they took the world ;  
“ But, they took it not with themselves to the tomb.

300 “ They departed, and each one <sup>eternal</sup> reaped what he sowed :  
“ There remained only good and bad fame.”

When thou hast power over an enemy, سور  
Injure him not ; because this (the power) is indeed sufficient  
sorrow to him.

A living enemy, head-revolving (raging), about thee (in  
desire of thy blood),  
Is better than his (life-) blood revolving (circulating) about  
thy neck.

I heard that Darius of august family,  
Became separated, on a hunting day, from his retinue ;

297 Jamshíd was a famous Persian king who practised sorcery, by which  
jinns and devils became subject to him. It is said he reigned three  
hundred years, during which time there was no sickness among the  
people. At length he laid claim to godship, and was slain by Žuhák.

In the 'Ikd-i-manẓúm couplets 297 to 302 are omitted.

298 “ Damkardan ” signifies—to rest, or delay.

In some places :—

What use is there in boasting, or complaining, of prosperity and  
misfortune ?

If thou dost twinkle the eye, thou dost see neither this, nor that.

303 Darius III. (336–330) B.C., was a Persian king.

In the year 333 B.C., on the bank of the Issus, Darius with 600,000  
men met the army of Alexander consisting of 30,000 foot and 5,000  
horse. Darius fled from the field. Alexander gained a complete victory  
over the Persian Army, of which 110,000 were slain.

لاریان  
A herdsman came running towards him :  
Darius of happy sect said to his heart :—

305 "Perhaps, this is an enemy who has come to battle :  
"From a distance, I will pierce him with a white poplar  
arrow."

نیانی  
He adjusted the royal bow to the bow-string :  
He desired in a moment to make his existence, non-  
existence.

The herdsman said :—"Oh Lord of I'rán and Túrán !  
—"May the evil eye be far from thy time !—

مرغزرا  
"I am he who cherishes the king's horses :  
"In this meadow, I am in thy service."

The heart of the king, (which had) gone (in fear), returned  
to its place.

He laughed and said :—"Oh one of contemptible judg-  
ment !

310 "The auspicious angel (Jibrá'il) assisted thee ;  
"Otherwise, I had brought the bow-string to the ear."

زایه

Alexander then conquered Egypt, and was prepared in 331 B.C. to meet the forces which Darius had collected.

Darius wished for peace. He offered to Alexander the provinces west of the Euphrates, and a vast sum for the release of his family.

Alexander, being determined to conquer Persia, refused.

In 331 B.C. the two armies met near Arbela. Darius had 40,000 horse and myriads of infantry. The horsemen came from the Khurd and Turkoman tribes ; the footmen from Afghanistan and Bokhára.

Alexander mustered 7,000 horse and 40,000 foot.

As at the battle of the Issus, the courage of Darius gave way ; he fled, and his flight decided the fate of the day. Darius escaped the hand of Alexander, to fall by the hand of his own satrap Bessus.

This event is most graphically described by Shailkh Nizámí in Discourse 30 of the "Sikandar Náma," translated by Clarke.

308 The student should note that "parwaram" is used in the text, not "parwarad."

The guardian of the land-pastured laughed and said :—

“It is not proper to conceal advice from a benefactor ;

“It is not laudable deliberation, nor good judgment,

“That the king knows not an enemy from a friend.

“The condition of living in greatness is such,

“That thou shouldst know each humble person—who he is.

“Thou hast many times seen me in the presence :

“Thou hast asked me concerning the herd of horses and  
the meadow.

315 “Now in love I returned before thee :

“Thou dost not again recognise me from an enemy.

“Oh renowned monarch ! I am powerful ;

“Because, I can bring a particular horse out of a hundred  
thousand.

“By reason of wisdom and judgment, I have the guardian-  
ship of the horses ;

“Thou also shouldst keep thy own herd permanent (free  
from loss).”

When Darius heard this counsel from the man,  
He spoke fairly to him, and did him kindness.

Darius kept going and saying in his shame,—  
It will be proper to write this advice on the heart.

320 On account of anarchy, there may be sorrow in that throne  
and country,

When the deliberation of the king may be less than that  
of the shepherd.

How mayst thou hear the lament of one crying for justice,—

The curtain of thy bed-place at Saturn? كبروان

So sleep, that the lamentation may come to thy ear,  
If the crier for justice brings forth a shout. فغان

Who complains of the tyrant, who is in thy time, : dawn

When every violence that he commits is thy violence?

The dog tore not the skirt of one of a Kárawán,  
But the ignorant villager, who cherished the dog.

325 Oh Sa'dí! thou camest boldly into speech:

When the sharp sword of (true) speech is at thy hand,  
be victorious.

Say what thou dost know; because, truth spoken is well:  
Thou art not a bribe-taker, nor a blandishment-giver  
(hypocrite). مُسَوِّدَة

Bind avarice (to thyself) but (then) wash the book of philosophy;—

Bid farewell to avarice, and say whatever thou dost desire.

A certain neck-exalting one (a king), in Media, came to know

That a wretched one beneath an arch kept saying:— طاق

“Thou even art hopeful at the door (of God):

“Then accomplish the hope of those, door-sitting.”

57143

321 Kaiwán, or Zuhál, is the planet Saturn in the seventh heaven. Such is its loftiness that the cry for justice cannot reach so far.

In the 'Ikḍ-i-manzúm, couplets 322 to 358 are omitted.

308 When thou madest avarice thy garment, wash philosophy from the

The of thy wisdom; because, by reason of avarice, thou wilt not be able  
“parwaia according to philosophy.

330 Thou dost not wish, that thy heart may be sorrowful—  
 Bring forth from fetters the heart of the sorrowing ones.

The distress of the heart of the one justice-seeking  
 Casts a king from his kingdom.

Thou hast slept cool half a day in the retired place (haram);  
 Say <sup>^</sup>to the foreigner, burn in the heat outside.

God is the taker of justice for that person,  
 Who cannot ask for justice from a king.

---

One of the great ones, possessed of discretion,  
 Tells a story of the son of King 'Abdu-l-'Azíz.

335 Saying:—He had a ring-stone <sup>حلي</sup> set in a ring,  
 In respect to the value of which, the (Court) jeweller  
 was confounded.

At night, thou wouldst say it is the orb, world-  
 illuminating;

A glittering star it was, in light like the day.

By chance, a drought-year occurred,  
 When the full-moon <sup>قمر</sup> of the face of men became the new-  
 moon.

When he saw not ease and strength in man,  
 He considered it not manliness to be himself at ease.

When a person sees poison in the jaws of men,  
 How will the sweet water pass to his throat? <sup>حلق</sup>

---

334 The name of the son was 'Umar, a just and liberal prince.

340 He ordered : they sold the ring-stone for silver  
Because pity came to him, on account of the poor and  
orphan. <sup>ya-hin</sup>

He gave its value, in <sup>عزل</sup> spoil, in one week :  
He gave to the poor, and needy, and necessitous.

Those reproach-making fell on him,  
Saying :—" Such a ring will not again come to thy hand."

I heard that he said, and the rain of tears <sup>dam</sup>  
Ran down, like wax, on his cheeks—  
<sup>sham</sup>

As follows :—" Ugly is the ornament on a monarch,  
" The heart of a citizen afflicted with powerlessness.  
<sup>متا</sup>

345 " A ring, without a stone, is fit for me :  
" The heart of a sorrowful populace is not fit for me."  
<sup>and hagh</sup>

Happy is that one, who, the ease of man and woman,  
Prefers to his own ease. <sup>زیر</sup>

The cherishers of skill displayed not desire <sup>اغبت</sup>  
For their own pleasure (acquired) from the grief of others.

If the king on the throne <sup>سیر</sup> sleep pleasantly,  
I think not the poor man sleeps at ease.

But if he keeps at night a long time awake,  
Men will sleep in ease and repose. <sup>بار</sup>

350 Praise be to God ! this way of life and straight road,  
Atábuk Abú-Bakr son of Sa'd has .

In Persia, a trace of another calamity, a person  
Sees not save the figures of the moon-like ones (lovely  
women). <sup>فامت</sup> <sup>موشا</sup>

These five couplets came pleasantly to my ear,  
Which they sang in an assembly last night:—

“Last night, I had ease of life;  
“Because, that moon-faced one was in my embrace.

“When I,—head intoxicated with sleep—saw her,  
“I said:—‘Oh lovely one! the cypress before thee is low  
(in stature).

355 “‘One moment, wash the narcissus (the eye) from sweet  
sleep;

“‘Laugh like the rose-bush; and sing like the nightingale.

“‘Oh calamity of the age! why art thou asleep?

“‘Come; and bring the luscious red wine.’

“Confused with sleep, she glanced and said:—

“‘Thou dost call me a *calamity*, and sayst,—sleep not.’”

In the time of the Sultán (Abú Bakr) of enlightened spirit,  
A person sees not another calamity awake.

أخبار

In the annals of former kings, it is written,  
That when Tukla sate on the throne of Zangí,

360 <sup>بكره</sup> In his age, a person offended not another;  
If this were indeed so, he surpassed (former kings) and  
(for a king) enough. <sup>سبق</sup>

358 This couplet is by the Author, in praise of the King; its meaning is:—  
In the time of the Sultán of enlightened spirit, men experience only the  
calamity of Lovely-Ones!

359 “Tukla” is the name of one of the Atábukuks, who ruled in Shíráz;  
Zangí is the grandfather of Abú-Bakr, the son of Sa’d.

360 The qualities of justice of Tukla were high. In his time, no one  
injured another. Sa’di says:—if this be so, he surpassed former kings,  
and for a king this is enough.

He (Tukla) once thus spoke to a pious man, <sup>فردوس</sup>  
 Saying :—"My life in uselessness became accomplished."

"When country and rank, and throne pass away,  
 "Only the fakir carries away empire from the world.

"I wish to sit in the corner of devotion, <sup>مداوت</sup>  
 "That I may obtain this period of five days that is (left  
 "of my life)."

When that wise one of enlightened soul heard,  
<sup>تندیس</sup> With anger, he arose, saying :—"Oh Tukla! this is  
 enough. <sup>برآشت</sup>

365 "Religion is only in the service of the people;  
 "It is not—in the rosary, and the prayer carpet, and  
 darwesh-garment. <sup>تاریک</sup> <sup>سایه</sup>  
<sup>دایه</sup>

"Be a king on thy own throne;  
 "Be a darwesh in pure morals.

"Keep loin-girt in truth and desire (of God); <sup>سوز</sup>  
 "Keep tongue-bound from idle speech and pretension." <sup>نور</sup>

<sup>طریقت</sup> In religion, the foot (of action) is necessary, not the breath  
 (of words);  
 Because, breath without action has no real essence. <sup>نفس</sup>

The great ones, who possessed the ready money of purity, <sup>پا</sup>  
 Wore, beneath the outside coat, [such a] habit (of truth and  
<sup>جنین</sup> desire of God). <sup>نفس</sup>

361 Because I exercised not enough devotion to God.

362 Seven days were required for the creation of the world. Man is born on one day; he dies on another. Thus five days are left which metaphorically represent his life.

369 Belief is not to be reposed on *appearance*, but on the *way-of-life*.



370 I heard that the Sultán of Turkey wept,  
Before a good man, possessed of sciences,

Saying:—"From the hand of the enemy, power remained  
not to me,

"Save this fort and city nothing remained to me.

"Much I tried that my son,

"After me, might be chief of the assembly (*i.e.* army).

"Now the enemy of bad descent prevailed;

"He twisted the tip of my hand of manliness and exertion.

"What plan may I prepare, what remedy may I make?

"Because, the soul in my body is consumed from grief."

375 The good man said:—"Oh brother! suffer sorrow for  
thyself

"Since, the best and largest portion of thy life has gone.

"This extent (of country) is sufficient for thee, so long as  
thou dost remain (in the world);

"When thou dost go, the world is the place of another."

If he be wise; if he be foolish;—

Suffer not grief for him, because he will endure his own  
grief.

The world is not worth the trouble of having;  
Of seizing by the sword, and of abandoning.

Whom of the Kings of Persia knowest thou,  
Of the age of Firídún, and Zahhák, and Jamshíd,

380 In respect to whose throne and country, did not declina-  
tion come?

There only remained the country of God most High.

In the 'Ikíd-i-manzúm, couplets 370 to 414 are omitted.

In some places:—

The wise man was amazed, saying:—"Wherefore is this weeping?

It is proper to weep, on account of this reason and spirit."

To whom remains the hope of remaining for ever in this  
world,

When thou seest no one who remained for ever?

If silver and gold and treasure and property remains,  
It becomes trodden under foot, after a few days.

But of whomsoever a good act remains current,  
—May mercy perpetually arrive on his soul!—

A great one, whose good name remained,—  
One can say with the pious, as follows :—*he remained.*

385 Ho ! take care that thou dost cherish the tree of liberality,  
In order that thou mayst have hope that thou mayst enjoy  
its fruit.

Practise liberality that to-morrow (the Judgment Day)  
when they (the angels) place the account-book,  
They may give thee dignities, according to the extent of  
thy beneficences.

One, whose foot-struggle is greater,  
(Has) greater dignity, at the Court of God.

One, a backslider, <sup>سای</sup>deceiver, <sup>سرمسار</sup>shameless,  
Greedily desires the wages for work not done.

381 In some places :—

Make thy own deliberation; because that one full of wisdom,  
Who is after thee, endures his own grief.

Boast not of this five days' stay;

Prepare for the thought of the plan of departing (from the world).

387 "Sa'í kadam" signifies—to run, to make an effort. It may be  
translated by "'amal" work. In some copies the first line runs :—

One whose foot is foremost in endeavour.

388 The other—whose foot, in endeavour, falls backwards, and who practises deception—will remain in God's court, disappointed and unrewarded.

Quit him, so that he may carry the back of his hand (in regret) to the téeth :

An oven (of ability) so hot,—yet he baked not the bread (of good deeds) !

90 At the time of corn-gathering, thou wilt know,  
That idleness is—not seed-sowing.

افشاري تمام  
A wise man, in the boundaries of Syria,  
Took a cave, for his dwelling away from the world.

By reason of his patience, in that dark corner of a place,  
His foot descended to the treasure of contentment.

فنايب  
I heard that his name was—"Khudá-dost" (friend of God) ;

He was of an angelic nature, man-in-form.

The great ones placed their heads at his door ;  
Because his head entered not at their doors (for petitioning).

عارف  
The holy man of pure practice desires  
The abandonment of lust, by (the) beggary [of the body.]  
مستألف

عزيمه  
When every hour, his lust says :—"give,"  
It makes him wander, in contempt, from village to village.

مخواری  
In that land, where this wise man was,  
There was a lord of the marches,—a tyrant.

Such that every feeble one, whom he used to find,  
He used to twist his hand (torment), with his strength of grasp.

9 This is uttered by the poet.

1 "Páe fano raftan" signifies—sabát-i-kadam warzidan; ístádagi kardan.

World-burner (a tyrant), and merciless, and malevolent-slayer,

The face of a world became distressed<sup>زشت</sup> by his bitterness.

400 A crowd of people went (from the country) on account of that tyranny and shame,<sup>عار</sup>  
They took his bad name into the districts.

A crowd of people (women), wretched and miserable, remained :

Behind the spinning wheel,<sup>چرخ</sup> they uttered curses<sup>نفرین</sup>.

In the place, where the hand of tyranny becomes long,  
Thou dost not see the lip of man, open from laughing.

The tyrant used now and then to come, to see the shaikh;  
"Khudá-dost" used not to look at him.

نوبتی One time, the king (the tyrant) said to him :—" Oh one of good fortune !

" Gather not together thy face severely, in abhorrence<sup>بغضت</sup> of me.

405 " Thou dost know that I have the desire of friendship for thee,

" For what, dost thou bear enmity to me ?

گفتم " I grant that I am not the chief<sup>سالار</sup> of the territory ;

" (But) in honour I am not less than the darwesh.

" I say not—place my excellence<sup>فضیلت</sup> above any one,

" So be with me, as (thou art) with every one."

The wise<sup>دانا</sup> 'ábid heard this speech :

He arose in perturbation, and said :—" Oh King ! hold thy ear (listen).

401 The student should note the use of "pesh giriftan."

408 "Bar ashuftan" signifies — to be grieved and angry.

"The distress of the people is on account of thy existence :  
 "I love not the affliction of the people.

410 "Thou art an enemy to him, with whom I am a friend ;  
 "I consider thee not a friend of mine.

"Why, in <sup>باطل</sup> vain, should I hold thee my friend,

"When I know that God considers thee enemy ?

"Give not a kiss on my hand, like a friend :

"Go,—love my friends (the creatures of God).

"If they tear off the skin of 'Khudá-dost,'

"He will not become the friend of the enemy of the friend."

I wonder at the sleep of that stony-hearted one,  
 On account of whom, a whole nation sleeps straitened in  
 heart.

415 Oh great one ! exercise not violence on the humble ;  
 Because, the world remains not in one way.

Twist not the grip of the hand of the powerless,  
 For, if he prevail, thou wilt rise to nothing.

I said to thee :—take not the feet of men from their  
 place (distress them not) ;  
 Because, if thou dost fall into distress, thou wilt become  
 weak.

411 In some places :—

If friendship for me chances to thee,  
 Perhaps then God holds thee an enemy.

415 That is—Wealth and power become changed.

416 "Panja pechidan" signifies—to vex, to cause distress.

417 That is :—

Drive not men from their place, and cause them not to slip from their  
 station and rank.

"Páe az jáe bendan" signifies—

Az kádar kase rá afgandan wa ba áram sákhtan.

"Páe" has here the force of "tákat."

"Az pá, e dar ámadan" signifies—to fall into distress.

It is not proper to reckon the enemy at a low estimation ;  
 Since I have seen a great mountain from a small stone. *922*

Dost thou not see that, when the (weak) ants assemble  
 together,  
 They bring trouble and torment to fighting lions ?

420 The (slender) hair is not less than a thread of silk :  
 When it becomes manifold, it is stronger than a chain (of  
 iron). *much stronger*

The heart of friends collected (tranquil) is better than  
 the treasure collected :  
 The empty treasury, better than men in grief.

Throw not the work of any one at his feet ;  
 Because it may often happen, that thou mayst fall at his  
 feet.

Oh feeble one ! endure (the tyranny) of the strong ;  
 Because, one day, thou mayst be stronger than he.

With resolution, bring forth a cry against the oppressor ;  
 Since, the arm of resolution is better than the hand of  
 force.

425 Say to the withered lip of the oppressed one,—laugh !  
 Because they will dig out the teeth of the tyrant.

By the noise of the drum, the rich man became awake ;  
 What knows he as to how the night of the watchman  
 passed ?

418 In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓūm, couplets 418 to 421 are omitted.  
 So, when the weak gather together they become strong.

422 " Dar pāe andakhtan " signifies—

Tahkír wa ihmál wa ta'líl kardan.

424 As they have said :—(*Arabic.*) The spirit of men is the cause of  
 the moving of mountains.

426 That is :—the rich one, all night, is in sleep and ease ; the poor one,  
 all night, is awake and in agitation.

The man of the Kárawán suffers grief on account of his  
own load (of merchandise);  
His heart burns not at the wounded back of the ass.

I have granted that thou art not of (the number of) the  
fallen :

When thou dost see a fallen one, why dost thou stand (and  
not give help) ?

On this point, I will tell thee a tale of past event;  
Inasmuch as it would be slothfulness to pass by this speech.

30 Such a famine occurred in the city of Damascus,  
That lovers forgot love.

The sky over the earth became such a miser,  
That the crops and the date-trees wetted not their lips.

The spring of the ancient fountains dried up;  
Water remained not, save the water of the eyes of  
orphans.

Only the sigh of a widow-woman, it used to be,  
If smoke went forth from a window.

I saw trees, leafless (poor), like a darwesh;  
Those strong of arm, languid and greatly distressed (by  
the severity of the famine).

28 "Giriftan" is frequently used in this sense, as "farz yákabúl kardan,"  
to grant, to assume, to agree.

30 Damascus was founded by Damshák, son of Nimrúd.  
Friends on meeting said in former times—"Ishk," love be to thee!  
Say in these—"Salám 'alayka," peace be to thee!

In the drought year, for fear of being asked for something, friends  
saluted not each other.

34 "Barg" signifies—the leaf of a tree; and also, provisions.

435 Not in the mountain, verdure; not, in the garden, a  
branch : <sup>نخ</sup>

The locusts ate the garden; and men, the locusts.

In that state of things, a friend came to me :  
To that extent broken down,—merely a skin on his bones.

Although, in dignity, <sup>mukarrat</sup> he was of strong state;  
Was lord of rank and gold and property.

I said to him :—" Oh friend of pure disposition !  
" Say, what wretchedness has happened to thee ? "

He angrily shouted at me, saying :—" Where is thy  
reason ?

" When thou dost know, and dost ask,—the question is a  
fault:

440 " Dost thou not see that distress has reached to an exceed-  
ing great degree,—

" Trouble arrived to an extreme limit ?

" The rain from the sky descends not ;  
" The sigh of the complaining ones ascends not."

At length, I said to him :—" For thee, there is not fear ;  
" The poison (only) slays where the antidote is not.

" Though another person should perish from destitution,  
" Thou hast wealth. To the duck, what fear of the  
storm ? "

<sup>foqih</sup>  
The lawyer, vexed, glanced at me :  
The glancing of a learned man at a foolish one.

445 Saying :—" Oh friend ! although a man is on the shore, <sup>ساحل</sup>  
" He rests not,—his friends, drowning. <sup>غرق</sup>

" I am not yellow of face, by reason of want of victuals ;  
" Grief for those food-less has made yellow my face."



The wise man wishes not to see a wound  
Neither on the limbs of a man, nor on his own limbs.

I am one of the first of those of sound body;  
When I behold a wound, my body trembles.

The pleasure of that sound-bodied one becomes disturbed,  
When he is at the side of the languid sick.

450 When I see that the wretched darwesh eats not,  
The morsel of food within my palate is poison and grief.

Thou dost take one of (his) friends to prison :—  
Where is his pleasure in the garden?

One night, the sigh of the people lighted up a fire.  
I heard that a half of the city of Baghdád was burned.

One, in that state, quickly uttered thanks,  
Saying :—"Injury has not reached my shop."

A world-experienced one said to him :—"Oh father of  
lust!

"For thee the grief of thy self was sufficient.

455 "Thou dost approve that a whole city should burn by fire,  
"If thy house is on one side, away from danger."

448 In some places :—

Thank God, although I am free from wound.

452 In the 'Ikḍ-manẓúm, couplets 452 to 479 are omitted.

454 The text gives "bú-l-hawás," which is said to be wrong; because  
"hawás" is Persian. The construction in—

"bú-l-faẓúl" }  
"bú-l-'ajab" } is correct, as the words are Arabic.

For this word, "bul-hawas" should be read, in which "bul" signifies  
"bisiyár."

Except the stony-hearted one, how may he make his  
stomach tight (with food),

When he sees persons stone-bound on the belly?

How does the rich man himself eat that morsel,  
 When he sees that the darwesh devours the blood (of his  
 heart from grief)?

Say not to the care-taker of the sick one:—"He is of  
 sound body," *na dard dard shod* (نارنجو دار)

Because he writhes from grief, like a sick one.

The one of tender-heart, when friends arrive at a stage,  
 Sleeps not, when the wearied loiterers are in rear.

*dārmāndogān az pas oon*

460 The heart of kings is a load carrier,  
 When they see the ass of the fire-wood drawer in the clay.

*خارلر*

If a (worthy) person is in the house of happiness,  
 One word of the saying of Sa'dí is enough.

This also is sufficient for thee, if thou wilt hear,  
 To wit:—if thou sowest thorns, thou reapest not jasmine.

*اگر خار کاری نسوزی*

Thou hast knowledge of the Kings of Persia,  
 Who exercised tyranny over their subjects.

456 The way of the most excellent of the pious was such that, when over-  
 taken with famine, they begged not of any. Rather, lest any should  
 become acquainted with their famished condition, they bound a stone on  
 the belly, by which they mitigated the pain of hunger and obtained an  
 appearance of fulness of belly, as from eating food.

458 The care-taker of the sick is, by sympathy, himself sick.

461 As they have said:—If a person is in the house, one word is enough.

462 As they have said:—

The sage of Ghuznaví has said:—

Oh Brother! whatever thou sowest, thou wilt reap.

سوت  
That dignity and sovereignty remained not;  
That tyranny over the peasant remained not.

465 Behold the crime which issued from the hand of the tyrant!

The world remained; he, with his acts of oppression, departed (died).

The body of the justice-giver is happy on the day of the place of assembling (resurrection);  
Because, he has an abiding place in the shadow of the throne of God.

To a tribe, whose goodness He approves, God Gives a king, just, of good judgment.

When He wishes to waste a world,  
He places the country, in the grasp of a tyrant.

The pious ones think cautiously of the tyrant;  
Because, the oppressor is (the personification of) the anger of God.

470 Recognise greatness from Him, and understand the ob-  
ligation;

Because, the prosperity of the ungrateful one becomes frail.

If thou dost express thanks (to God) in respect to this country and property,

Thou mayst reach to a property and country without decline (Paradise).

466 When, in the Day of Judgment, the Sun ascends to the height of one spear only (and will be very near), there are three persons whom God will place beneath the shadow of His throne.

One of the three will be a just king.

On the Judgment Day there will be no shadow save that of God's throne.

471 If thou dost exercise justice, equity, liberality, and generosity,—thou mayst obtain a property and country without decline, *i.e.* Paradise. Because,—thanks for country is the exercising of justice; and thanks for property is bestowing on the poor.

But, if in sovereignty thou doest violence,  
After sovereignty, thou mayst practise beggary.

Sweet sleep is forbidden to a king,  
When the weak one is the load-carrier of the strong.

خُرَد

To the extent of a mustard seed-grain, injure not a people ;  
Because, the Sultán is the shepherd, and the people the flock.

بر حاسنی

476 When they experience strife and injustice from the king,  
He is not a shepherd ; he is a wolf. Cry out against him.

به انجام رفت و به او بس کرد  
جضا

He went to a bad end, and thought ill-advisedly,  
Who exercised tyranny over his inferiors.

By negligence and severity towards these inferiors, he  
passes away ;  
A bad name will for years remain attached to him.

Thou dost not wish that, from behind, they should curse  
thee ?  
Be good : so that a person may not utter evil of thee.

اختر

I have heard that, in a territory of the west,  
There were two brothers (prince-sons), of one father (a  
king),

480 Army-commanding, and neck-exalting (headstrong), and  
stout,  
Good of visage, and wise, and expert with the sword.

سالم

The father considered them both to be terrible men ;  
He found them seekers of warlike action and strife.

خود را و ماورد

472 The beggary of this world is evident to all. The beggary of the next  
world consists in being there contemptible and void of its ready money.

481 "Yáft" here signifies—"díd."

He went (and) divided the country into two parts ;  
He gave a portion of it to each of the sons.

مبارا  
God forbid ! that on account of one another, they should  
wrangle,—  
Should draw forth, in contest, the sword of rancour.

After that, the father lived a short time ;  
(Then) he surrendered his precious soul to the Soul-  
Creator.

485 Death caused his rope of hope to break ;  
Death tied down his hands from work.

On two kings was established that kingdom,  
In which were treasure and army, beyond limit and  
computation.

According to their own view, in respect to their own  
welfare, راسا  
Each one took a different way.

One (pursued the path of) justice, so that he might bear a  
good name ; طيب

The other, tyranny, so that he might amass wealth.

عاطفت  
One made benevolence, the way of his life ;  
He gave money, and provided for the darwesh.

486 Laid foundations (of buildings), and gave bread, and  
cherished the army ; تبارك

Made night-houses for the sake of the night of the darwesh.

485 In some places :—

When Death broke the rope of his hope,  
The hand of Death tied down his tongue.

487 "Bih uftád" signifies—"bihbúd," or "*khairiyat*," welfare.

According to the guidance of their reason, to whatever they recognised  
as best for them, they each took their way.

Made empty the treasuries, but made full (numerous, or  
satisfied) the army; بیش

Even as people, the time of festivity.

The noise of gladness, like thunder, kept rising,  
Like Shíráz, in the time of (King) Abú-Bakr, son of Sa'd.

A wise monarch of happy disposition,—  
May the branch of his hope be fruitful!

Hear the tale of the youth, fame-seeking;  
He was of approved conduct, and happy temperament;

495 Assiduous in the consolation of high and low;  
A praise-utterer of God, morning and evening.

In that country, Kárún used to go boldly (fearless of the  
robber);  
Because, the king was a giver-of-justice, and the darwesh,  
satisfied.

In his time, there came not to a single heart (the injury of)  
—I say not—a thorn, nay, a rose-leaf!

By the assistance of fortune, he became chief of chiefs:  
The chiefs placed their heads (in submission) on the line of  
his order.

The other (prince) desired to increase [the power of] his throne  
and crown,

He augmented the tribute from the men of the villages.

491 In the East, a great deal of money is spent at a festival.

493 Or auspicious descent.

498 "Sar bar khatt nihádan" signifies—to be obedient to order.

499 In some places:—

Hear the end of the other brother!

If thou art a good man, and manly run.

500 Greedily thirsted for the property of the merchants;  
 Poured calamity on the lives of helpless ones.

Bestowed not and enjoyed not, in the hope of augmenting;  
 The wise man knows that he did not well.

Because, while he collected that gold, by cheating,  
 The army became distressed and dispersed by reason of  
 weakness.

The merchants heard the news,  
 To the effect that,—in the land of that unskilled one, there  
 is tyranny.

They cut off (abandoned) buying and selling from (in) that  
 place:

Cultivation was not; the peasant burned in heart (on  
 account of scarcity).

505 When Fortune turned away her head from his friendship,  
 The enemy necessarily prevailed over him.

The anger of the sky plucked out his root and fruit;  
 The hoof of the horse of the enemy dug his country.

In whom may he seek faith, when he broke his promise?  
 From whom does he wish the land-tax, when the villagers  
 fled?

What goodness does that unfaithful one hope for,  
 When imprecation is in pursuit of him?

601 "Peshí" is for "pesh-búdan"; it is called the "yá,e maşdariya" or  
 infinitive yá.

605 "Biná-kám" signifies—without desire, unasked, i.e. necessarily.

When, in the beginning of creation, his fortune was  
 reversed, *turned round down - nigūn*

Whatever the good men said to him—do; he did not.

- 510 What said the good men to that good (unjust) prince?—  
 Enjoy the fruit (of power; do justice); because the unjust  
 one enjoys not.

His imagination was a fault, and his policy languid;  
 Because, whatever he sought in oppression was (to be  
 found) in justice.

*name - lit. trace*  
 Of this one, a bad repute remained; of that one, a good  
 name:

The pinnacle of a good end is not for the bad.

A certain one (was sitting) at the end of a branch, and the  
 butt end kept cutting:  
 The Lord of the garden glanced, and saw.

He said:—If this man does evil, *qul*  
 He does it not to me, but to his own body. *نفس خود*

- 515 Advice is in place (proper), if thou wilt hear;  
 With the strong shoulder cast not down the weak ones.  
*كعب*

- 509 "Káf Kun."

"Kun," the order of God in the beginning of the creation of the world.

Verse of the Kurán:—(*Arabic.*) "When God wished to create a  
 thing, His command was indeed as follows:—God said to it—'Be!'—  
 Then it became."

"Káf" is the first letter of the word "Kun." Immediately on God's  
 order, all created things became.

512. "This" refers to the unjust prince; "that" to the just prince.

- 512 In the 'Tkd-i-manzúm, couplets 512 to 547 are omitted.



Because, to-morrow <sup>فرا</sup> (the Judgment Day) to God, the king  
brings  
The beggar, who before thee is not worth a barley-grain.

Since thou dost wish that, to-morrow, thou mayst be a  
great one,  
Make not an humble one thy enemy.

Because, when this kingdom passes from thee (in death),  
That beggar will, in anger, seize thy skirt. <sup>قمر</sup>

From the feeble, restrain thy hand ; do not (such a deed) ;  
Because, if they cast thee down, thou wilt become ashamed.

520 In the opinion of those free from <sup>آرادگار</sup> worldly cares, there is  
shame, <sup>خیال</sup>  
In falling by the hand of the fallen.

The great ones of enlightened mind and good fortune  
Won, by learning, a crown and throne. <sup>قزاقی</sup>

<sup>باردش</sup>  
In rear of the upright, swerve not : <sup>لج</sup>  
And, if thou dost desire truth, listen to Sa'dí.

Say not—there is no dignity, higher than sovereignty ;  
Because there is no empire safer than the empire of the  
darwesh.

Men, the more lightly loaded, the more quickly go :  
This is true ; and the pious ones listen (and obey).

516 The agent to "barad" is "gadá,e"; and its subject is "Khusrau,e." In the endeavour to keep the two lines distinct, the couplet is obscure. The meaning is :—

On the Judgment Day, the oppressed beggar (who in thy opinion is not worth a grain of barley) brings the king (his oppressor) before God.

525 The empty-handed one suffers distress, on account of a loaf  
of bread :

The king suffers grief, to the extent of a world.

In the case of the beggar, when the bread of the evening  
is obtained,

He sleeps as pleasantly, as the Sultán of Syria.

Grief and joy proceed to an end ;  
By death, these two quit the head.

Whether this one, on whose head they placed the crown :  
Or that one, on whose neck the (paying of) tribute came,

If the exalted one be in Saturn ;  
And, if the straitened one be in prison.

530 When the cavalcade of death hastes to the head of these two,  
It is not possible to recognise one from the other.

The guardianship of country and empire is a calamity :  
The beggar is king, but his name is beggar !

---

I once heard that, in a certain place,  
A skull spoke to an 'ábid,

Saying :—" I possessed the pomp of order-giving ;  
" I had on my head the cap of greatness (a crown) ;

" Heaven and concordant fortune gave me aid ;  
" With the arm of empire, I seized Babylonia ;

535 " I had greatly desired that I might enjoy Kirmania,  
" When, suddenly, the worms ate my head."

Pluck out the cotton of carelessness from the ear of sense.  
That the advice of dead men may come to thy ear.

---

535 Tama' karda búdam may be rendered :—  
I was desire-making ; or, I was wishing.

The man of good work—evil is not to him :

No one practises evil, that good may come to himself.

The man mischief-stirring is also in the desire of wickedness,  
Like the scorpion, that seldom goes as far as his own  
house.

in thy disposition, there is not (the wish for) a person's  
advantage,

A jewel and the hard stone are even so identical.

Oh friend of happy disposition ! I uttered a mistake ;  
Since there is profit in iron, and stone, and brass.

Even so, for the sake of reputation, the dead is best, the  
man

Over whom the stone has pre-excellence.

Not every man-born-one is better than a rapacious animal ;  
Since the rapacious animal is better than the bad man-  
born-one.

Man, endowed with wisdom, is better than the beast of  
prey,—

Not the man, who, like a beast of prey, falls upon men.

When a man understands only eating and sleeping,  
What excellence has he over the reptiles ?

535 The unfortunate horseman, going without a road,  
The footman surpasses in travelling.

No one sowed the grain of generosity,  
Who gathered not up the harvest of the desire of his  
heart.

---

538 When the scorpion, for man-injuring, issues from his house—men cause  
him injury, so that it is seldom they let him return to his house alive.

In our lives, we have never heard,  
That goodness befell the bad man.

---

A man of war had fallen into a well  
Such an one that the male-tiger became female, from fear  
of him.

The evil-intent one ever experiences only evil :—  
He fell ; and saw no one weaker than himself.

550 All night, from complaint and lamentation, he slept not ;  
One struck his head with a stone, and said :—

Didst thou ever come to a person's call (for help),  
That to-day thou dost desire a grievance-redresser ?

Thou didst sow every seed of unmanliness ;  
See assuredly what thou hast taken up.

Who places a plaster on thy soul-wound,  
When hearts keep complaining of the wounds inflicted by  
thee ?

Thou usedst to dig a pit in our path,  
In the end, without doubt, thou hast fallen into the pit.

555 Two persons, for the sake of high and low, dig a pit :  
One of good walk of life ; the other, of bad repute.

---

548 "Gazír" signifies—an officer, a hero.

549 "Khud" should be read with *fatha* for poetry sake.

550 *Lit.* "One stuck a stone on his head."

553 Whatever thou dost sow, thou dost take up its produce.

553 In some places :—

Souls will bewail, on account of thy power.

And again :—

Thou hadst no grief, for the pain of hearts.

This one, that he may make the throat of the thirsty one  
fresh;

The other, that people may fall into it, up to the neck.

If thou doest bad, expect not goodness:

Because the tamarisk never brings forth the grape-fruit.

Oh thou barley sown in autumn! I think not  
That thou wilt obtain wheat, at reaping-time.

If with soul, thou dost cherish the tree of hell,  
Think not, that thou mayst ever eat its fruit.

560 The wood of the colocynth brings not the green date:  
Whatever seed thou didst cast,—expect that very fruit.

They relate a story of a certain good man,  
That he paid not respect to Hujjáj, the son of Joseph.

In frenzy, he cast on him such power (of argument)  
That the power of altercation remained not to Hujjáj.

558 Another poet says:—

Be attentive to this speech and listen well:

Wheat springs from wheat; barley from barley.

559 “Zaḳúm” (properly written “zaḳḳúm”) is a fruitless, thorny tree of  
the desert; its white sap is of foul smell; it is called the tree of hell.

In the ‘Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 559 and 560 are omitted.

560 “Khar-zahra” is called in Arabic “sammu-l-ḥimár.” Originally, in  
Persian, it was written “khar-zahraj”; in medical works, it is called  
“ḥinzal,” that is, colycinth.

561 Hujjáj, the son of Joseph (not the Joseph of Bible history), was an  
amír of Baghdád, notorious for tyranny. He lived in 685 A.D.

The good man gave advice with severity; and, whatever Hujjáj said,  
rejected.

562 “Saúdá” signifies—frenzy, anger, passion.

“Dast-i-hujjat fishánad.” That is to say, Hujjáj became convinced.  
The custom of Hujjáj was this:—He would slay a guiltless man. If it  
were his pleasure, they would spread the decapitation carpet before him;  
place the victim on it; cut off his head; and take away the slain one on  
it. In this way, the spot, in front of Hujjáj, was unstained with blood.

Hujjáj looked sharply at the officer of the court,  
Saying:—"Cast down the decapitation-carpet, and spill his  
blood."

When argument remained not to the violence-seeking one,  
He draws, in contest, his face together.

565 The man of God laughed and wept :

The stony-hearted one of obscure judgment wondered.

When he saw that he laughed, and again wept,  
He inquired, saying:—"Why is this laughing and  
weeping?"

The Man of God said:—"I keep weeping, on account (of  
the violence) of time ;

"Because, I have four helpless children.

"I keep laughing on account of the grace of the pure God ;

"Because I, the *oppressed one*, go to the dust,—not the  
*oppressor*."

One said to Hujjáj:—"Oh good-hearted monarch !

"What dost thou desire of this old man ? touch him not.

570 "Because a people look towards, and lean upon him :

"It is not lawful, to slay a crowd at one time.

"Practise greatness and forgiveness, and liberality :

"Think of his little children.

"Perhaps thou art the enemy of thy own household,

"Because thou dost approve of evil to households ?

"Think not—hearts (being) torn by thy tyranny—

"That, on the last day, good may befall thee."

---

573 For "resh," read "resh-shuda."

I heard that Hujjáj listened not; but shed his blood.  
 Who knows how to fly from the decree of God?

575 That night, a great one slept in that thought:  
 In sleep, he saw him, and asked (his state); the  
 slaughtered one said:

“Hujjáj urged not his punishment, in regard to me, more  
 than one moment;

“Punishment remained to him, till the Judgment Day.”

The oppressed one slept not; fear his sigh:  
 In the morning time, fear the sigh of his heart.

Dost thou not fear, that, at night, the one of pure heart  
 May bring forth, from the burning of his heart,—Oh  
 Lord!

Iblís did evil, and experienced good?—No;  
 The pure fruit comes not from the filthy seed.

580 Shout not against rough lion-like men,  
 When with boys, in boxing, thou dost not prevail.

One gave advice to a son  
 —Preserve the counsel of the wise—

---

576 “Siyásat” signifies—order, regulation of government. Here it means  
 punishment.

577 Muḥammad ordered:—(*Arabic.*) Fear the claim of the oppressed one;  
 indeed God Most High has not hung a curtain between this and that  
 (between Himself and the oppressed one.)

579 As they have said:—

Tree and fruit continually speak to thee,

Saying:—Oh Sir! whatever thou wilt sow, the same grows for thee.

In some places:—

At the time of quarrelling, rend not the curtain of any one;

Because, thou also mayst have shame in secret.

581 The second hemistich has no connection with the first, nor with couplet

582. The author says to the reader as follows:—

I am relating the advice given by a certain one; listen, and hold  
 dear.

In the *Ṭīd-i-manzúm*, couplets 581 to 588 are omitted.

"Oh son! exercise not violence on small folk,  
 "Because one day, a great one may attack thy head."

Oh wolf of deficient understanding, dost thou not fear,  
 That, one day, a panther may rend thee in pieces?

In youth, I had strength of grasp;  
 The heart of inferiors was distressed on account of me.

585 I suffered one blow of the fist of the strong;  
 I exercised not force, again, against the weak.

---

Take care thou sleepest not in carelessness; because sleep  
 Is improper for the eyes of the leader of a tribe.

Beware; sympathise with the grief of inferiors;  
 Fear the violence of time.

The advice, that is free from design, ~~sub~~  
 Is like bitter medicine,—the repelling of disease.

They relate a story of one of the kings,  
 Whom the disease of guinea-worm made like a spindle.

590 Weakness of body to such a degree overthrew him,  
 That he envied his subjects.

Although, the king on the chess-board is famous,  
 When weakness comes, he is less than a pawn.

A courtier kissed the ground before the king,  
 Saying:—"May the country of the Lord be eternal!

"In this city, is a man of happy spirit,  
 "Like whom, in abstinence, a man is rare.

"They brought not before him the important affairs of any  
 one,—  
 "Whose object was not obtained, in a breath.



595 "An improper act has never issued in regard to him,  
 "(He is) one of illumined heart, and one whose prayers are  
 answered.

"Call (him), so that he may utter a prayer, on account of  
 this disease

"That mercy from heaven may arrive on earth."

The king ordered, so that the chiefs of the servants  
 Summoned the old man of happy footstep.

They went and uttered the message. The fakir came—  
 Body powerful in contemptible dress.

The king said:—"Oh wise man! utter a prayer;  
 "Because, in respect to the guinea-worm, I am foot-bound,  
 like a needle."

600 The old man, bent as to his back, heard this speech :  
 With severity, he brought forth a harsh shout,

Saying:—"God is compassionate to the just ruler :  
 'Forgive; and behold the gift of God.

"How may my prayer be profitable to thee—

"The oppressed captives, in pit and fetters?

"Thou hast not made presents to the people,

"Whence mayst thou experience the empire of easiness?

"It is necessary to ask pardon (from God) for thy fault,  
 Then, beseech a blessing from the holy shaikh.

605 "How may his (the shaikh's) prayer aid thee,  
 "The prayers of oppressed ones behind thee?"

599 The eye of the needle is considered the foot. When it is threaded, it  
 is said to be foot-bound.

The monarch of Persia heard this speech ;  
From anger and shame, he frowned.

He grieved and then said to his heart :—  
“Why do I grieve ? this, that the darwesh said, is right.”

He ordered : so that whoever was in fetters,  
Him, by order, they quickly freed.

The world-experienced one (the shaikh), after two in-  
clinations of the head in prayer,  
Lifted up the hand of supplication to God,

610 Saying :—“ Oh uplifter of the sky !  
“In battle (against thee) thou didst seize him ; in peace  
invite him.”

The saint thus held up his hands in prayer,  
When the king raised his head (from the pillow) and  
leaped on his feet.

Thou wouldst say :—“ From joy, he will fly,  
“Like a peacock, when he saw no longer the thread (of  
captivity) on his foot.”

The king ordered :—the treasury of his jewels,  
They scattered on his (the shaikh's) feet, and gold on his  
head.

The shaikh shook his skirt from all that (treasure) and  
said :—

“ For the sake of the false, it is not proper to conceal the  
truth.

610 “ Jang wa şulh ” signify—“ mukhálifat wa muwáfikat,” i.e. in opposition  
and concord.

614 “ Dáman afshándan,” or “ dáman bar afshándan,” signifies—to  
journey, to abandon, to turn away the face from. That is:—for the  
sake of *wealth*, it is not fit to conceal the truth.

615 "Go not again to the end of the tether (of injustice),  
 "Lest that again the guinea-worm should raise its head."

When once thou hast fallen, take care of thy foot,  
 That once more it slips not from its place.

Listen to Sa'dí, for this speech is true,—  
 "Not every time, has the fallen one risen."

Oh Son! the world is not an everlasting country;  
 There is no hope of the sincerity from the world.

Morning and evening, on the wind, used not to go,  
 The throne of Sulaimán?—on him be peace!

620 In the end, didst thou not see that it went to the wind  
 (became non-existent),

Happy is that king, who went (from the world) possessed  
 of learning and justice!

That person seized from the midst (of the world) the ball  
 of empire,

Who was in consideration of the ease of the people.

Those things which they took up (to the future world)  
 came of use;

Not those things which they amassed and abandoned  
 (in this world).

I have heard that, in respect to the glorious chief of Egypt,  
 Death hastened an army on his life.

615 "Sar-i-rishta" signifies—desire, or object.

Practise not again the tyrannies which thou didst once exercise.

617 The second hemistich is the true speech referred to.

618 In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 618 to 636 are omitted.

622 In some places :—

This space of five days' prosperity is his,

Whose pleasure is—the vexing of men.

623 "Ajall" is glorious; "ajal" signifies—death.

The beauty went from his cheek, heart-exalting :  
 When the sun becomes yellow, much of the day remains  
 not.

625 The wise men (in sorrow) bit the hand of annihilation ;  
 Because, in the medical books, they saw no remedy for  
 death. ~~death~~

Every throne and country declines—  
 Save the country of the Eternal Order-Giver.

When the day of his life came near to the night (of non-  
 existence),  
 They heard him say beneath his lip,

As follows :—" A king like me, in Egypt, there was not :  
 " When this is the fruit, sovereignty is worthless.

" I gathered the world ; I enjoyed not its fruit :  
 " Like the helpless ones, I passed from its desire."

630 The one of approved judgment who gave and enjoyed ;  
 Gathered the world, for the sake of his own body.

Strive in this work, so that wealth may be a dweller with  
 thee ;  
 Because, whatever remains behind thee is regret and fear.

The rich man, on the couch, soul-fleeting, makes  
 One hand short ;—and the other, long.

At that moment, he shows thee by the hand,  
 —Because, fear has bound his tongue from speaking,—

625 The Sages chose the hand of annihilation ; or became captive to its  
 power and resigned themselves to his dying.

627 " Dar zer-i-lab guftan," signifies—to whisper.

629 " Az sar raftan," signifies—to abandon.

634 " Dast" has yâ'e wahdat.

To this effect:—extend one hand in generosity and  
liberality;

Contract the other hand from tyranny and avarice.

635 Now, that thou hast the power, take action;  
How again (in the grave) mayst thou bring forth the hand  
from the shroud?

Often the moon and pleiades and sun will shine;  
But thou wilt not raise thy head from the pillow of the  
grave.

---

King Kizil Arslán had a strong fort  
That exalted its neck above the mountain Alwand.

There was not fear of any one; nor need of anything:  
Like the ringlets of brides, its road fold within fold.

It had fallen strangely in a garden, in such a way,  
As a white egg on a green tray.

640 I heard that a man of favourable mien  
Came, from a long journey, to King Kizil-Arslán.

A truths-recogniser; world-experienced;  
A skilled one; world-travelled;

A great one; an eloquent one, work-knowing;  
A wise one; speech-weighing; much-knowing.

Kizil said:—"So much as thou hast travelled,  
"Hast thou seen another place, strong like this?"

---

635 "Dast zadan" signifies—to assist, or to show manliness.

637 Alwand is a lofty mountain in the territory of Hamdán.

638 Because the fort was strong, and all things were ready within it.

"Zulf" is the ringlet that goes round about the ear.

He laughed, saying :—" This fort is joyous ;  
 " But, I do not think it is strong.

645 " Did not the obstinate ones (kings) possess it before thee !  
 " A few moments, they were ; and they abandoned it.

" May not other kings take it, after thee,  
 " (And) enjoy the fruit of thy tree of hope ?

" Remember the revolution of the country of thy father ;  
 " Set free the heart from the knot of reflection.

" Fortune placed him, in a corner (of the grave) in such  
 a way,

" That power remained not to him, over a particle.

" When hope remained not as to any thing, or person,  
 " Hope remained to him of the excellence of God only."

650 To the wise man, the world is straw ;  
 For, every moment, it is the place of another.

---

A frantic one, in Persia, thus spoke,  
 To Naushíraván, saying :—" Oh heir of the country of  
 Jamshíd !

" If country and fortune had remained to Jamshíd,  
 " When would crown and throne have become attainable  
 by thee ? "

If thou bring the treasure of Kárún within thy grasp,  
 There only remains—what thou dost give (to the indigent)  
 thou mayst take away.

---



---

644 If it were strong, the Angel of Death and Death would not enter it.  
 646 "It" refers to the fort.  
 647 This world, which was *lent* to them, remained not in their hands.  
 650 In the 'Ikd-i-manẓúm, couplets 651 to 655 are omitted.

When Alap-Arslán gave his soul to the Soul-giver,

The son placed the royal crown on his head.

655 From the crown-place, they consigned him to the tomb,  
The target-place was not a spot for sitting.

Thus spoke a distraught wise one,

—When he saw his son, the next day, on horse-back,—

“Oh excellent government and country! When head  
down-cast,

“The father departs (in death), the son’s foot is in the  
stirrup.”

Thus is the revolution of time

A gad-about, and bad-of-faith, and inconstant.

When the One of ancient days brings his life to an end,

One, whose fortune is young, raises his head from the  
cradle.

660 Place not the heart on the world, for it is a stranger,  
Like the musician, who is, every day, in a different house.

Pleasure is not proper with such a heart-ravishing one,  
Who has, every morning, a fresh mate.

This year, when the village (of the world) is thine, do  
good:

Because, next year, another will be village-chief.

A sage prayed for King Kaykubád,

Saying:—“In thy sovereignty, may there be no decline!”

655 \* “Amáj-gah” is the place, where they fix the target; it is also applied  
to a king’s throne.

656 Distraught as to the things of this world; wise as to those of the  
next.

657 The speaker jests at the transient nature of things.

658 “Sar dar nashíb” signifies—sar-nigún; ma,yús; be bahra.

663 In the ‘Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 663 to 677 are omitted.

A great one, upon this, reproached him,  
 Saying:—"The wise man utters not the impossible,—of  
 wonder!

665 "Of the kings of Persia, whom dost thou know,  
 "Of the time of Fīrīdūn and Zāhhāk and Jamshīd,  
 "In respect to whose throne and country, decline hap-  
 pened not?  
 "(To utter) the impossible is not decorous, on the part of  
 a wise man.

"To whom remains the hope of existing always,  
 "When thou seest no one, who remains for ever?"

The learned sensible man thus replied,  
 Saying:—"The wise man utters not unsuitable speech.

"I sought not perpetual life for him;  
 "I sought for aid, by the grace of his liberality.

670 "For, if he be devout, and pure in conduct,  
 "Religion-understanding, advice-hearing,—

"The day, on which he plucks up his heart from this  
 country (of the world),  
 "He pitches his royal tent in the other country (of  
 Paradise).

"Then, there is no decline to this empire;  
 "There is translation from the (transient) world to the  
 (everlasting) world.

"If he be devout, what harm in his death?  
 "For he is a king even in the future world."

Whosoever has treasure, and command, and army;  
 Government, and dignity, and desire, and pleasure,—

675 If his disposition be good,—  
 Ease, at all times, is prepared for him.



But, if he exercises violence against the poor,  
This same command and dominion are his for five days.

When Far'ún abandoned not wickedness,  
He exercised sway only up to the brink of the grave.

---

I have heard that of the monarchs of Ghúr,  
A certain king used to seize asses by force.

The asses, beneath heavy loads, fodderless,  
Wretched, perished in the space of two days.

680 When Time makes the mean one rich,  
He places a load on the straitened heart of the darvesh.

When his roof is lofty, the self-worshipper  
Pollutes, and casts rubbish on the humble roof (of his  
neighbour).

I heard that, one day, with the intention of hunting,  
The tyrannous monarch went out.

He urged his steed in rear of the game,  
Night overtook him ; he remained far from his retinue.

Knew, in solitude, neither the turning nor the path ;  
Cast at length his head (himself) into a village.

85 A certain old man was residing in that village,  
Old-of old men, men-recognising.

He kept saying to his son :—" Oh happy portion !  
Take not thy ass, in the morning, to the city.

---

8 Ghúr is a country near Kandahár.

9 "Rúe" may mean—súe ; jánib.

“ For this one, ungenerous and of reversed fortune

“ — Would that I might, instead of his throne, behold his  
bier ! —

“ Has his loins girt in a demon's service,

“ A cry, on account of the hand of his violence, goes to  
the sphere.

“ In this territory, ease and cheerfulness

“ The eye of man saw not and sees not.

690 “ Perhaps this one whose book of sins is full, void of  
purity,

“ Will go to hell,—curses in his rear.”

The son said :—“ Long is the way and difficult ;

“ Oh one of good fortune ! I cannot go on foot.

“ Consider a way, and express an opinion ;

“ For thy judgment is more luminous than mine.”

The father said :—“ If thou wilt listen to my judgment,

“ It is proper to take up a large stone ;

“ To strike the ass, the load-carrier, several times with it ;

“ To wound his head, and his leg, and his flank.

695 “ Perhaps, that base one of ugly religion

“ An ass,—lame, wounded—may be, for his work, useless.

“ Like Khizr, the prophet, who shattered the ship,

“ And, thus, stayed the hand of the powerful tyrant.

“ In the year, in which the tyrant seized the ship at sea.

“ He won many years of bad-repute.”

---

696 “ Khizr ” was a celebrated prophet ; his history is written in the Súra  
Kahf of the Kurán ; he is said to have discovered the water of life.—See  
Sikandar Náma, Discourses 68, 69, and 70.

When the boy heard this tale from his father,  
He took not his head beyond the writing of the order.

He struck down the helpless ass with a stone ;  
The ass became feeble of leg, lame of foot.

700 The father said to him :—" Now, take thy own way ;  
" Take that road even which is desirable to thee."

The son fell in with a *káráván* ;  
As much abuse as he knew, he gave (to the tyrant).

And, on this side, the father—face towards the sky,  
Saying :—" Oh Lord ! by the prayer-carpet of the true,

" Give me, from Time, as much tranquillity,  
" As ruin springs from this oppressing tyrant.

" If I witness not his destruction,  
" My eyes, in the night of the grave, will not sleep in the  
dust.

705 " A woman,—much better than an injurious man ;  
" A dog,—better than the man, man-injuring.

The hemaphrodite, who shows injustice towards himself.  
" Better than that one, who shows evil towards man."

The tyrant-king heard this speech, but said nothing ;  
He tethered his horse ; and, head on saddle-cloth, laid  
himself down to sleep.

All night, in wakefulness, he counted the stars ;  
Through frenzy and reflection, sleep took him not.

When he heard the voice of the morning-bird,  
He forgot the night's distress.

The (king's) horsemen, all night, galloped (in search) ;  
Recognised, in the morning, the track of his horse :

Beheld, on horseback,—in that plain, the king,  
On foot ; the whole of the troop went (towards him) :

Placed the head, in service, on the earth,  
—From the wave of the multitude, the earth became like  
the sea.—

The great ones sate down, and asked for food ;  
They ate, and set the assembly in array.

One of his old friends said :—  
—Who was his chamberlain, at night ; and courtier, by  
day.—

715 “ Last night, what victuals did the peasants place before  
thee ?

“ As for us, neither eye nor ear reposed.”

The monarch could not relate the adventure,  
Which, from bad repute, occurred to him.

He brought his head, very slowly, before the courtier's  
head ;  
(And) whispered, secretly, to his ear :—

“ No one brought before me the leg of a bird,  
“ But the leg of an ass,—dislocated beyond measure.”

When the tumult of joy came into the king's nature,  
Memory of the villager of the previous night came to him.

720 He ordered :—they searched, and firmly bound him ;  
Cast him, with ignominy, at the foot of the throne.

The black-hearted one drew forth the sharp sword ;  
The helpless one knew not the way of flight :

714 The second line describes the friend.

In the 'Ik̄d-i-manẓúm, couplets 714 and 715 are omitted.

718 They brought him—not the leg of a bird to eat,—but the dislocated  
leg of an ass, as evidence of his tyranny.

Reckoned that moment the last of his life;  
Said whatever revolved in his heart.

Seest thou not that when the knife is at the head  
Of the pen—its tongue (nib) is swifter?

When the villager knew that flight from the enemy was  
impossible,  
Fearless of him, he poured forth the arrows of his quiver  
(of speech).

725 He raised the head of despair, and spoke:—  
“On the night of the grave, it is not possible to sleep in  
the house.”

“Oh monarch! not alone, said I to thee,  
“That thou art of reversed fortune and unfortunate.

“I (alone) cursed not the power of thy oppression,  
“But a people; suppose—one slain, out of a people:  
(what then?)

“From the mercilessness that exists in thy time,  
“The whole world is the proclaimer of thy violence.

“Why getst thou angry with me only?  
“I spoke before thee; but, all the World behind (thy  
back).

730 “It is strange that cursing on my part comes harshly to  
thee,  
“Play; if thou canst slay the whole world.

“But if rebuke, on my part, appears severe  
“Pluck up, in justice, the root of reproach (of injustice).

“When thou doest injustice, expect not,  
“That thy name for goodness will go into the country.

“ And, if—oh mean one !—it be that my speech is hard  
to thee,

“ Do not to another,—what is hard to thee.

“ For thee, the remedy is to turn away from tyranny ;

“ It is not an innocent matter, to slay the helpless.

735 “ Suppose—for thee, five days more are remaining ;—

“ Suppose—two days more of enjoying pleasant ease.  
(What then ?)

“ The tyrant of bad walk of life remains not (in the world),

“ (But) everlasting curses will remain on him.

“ I know not how thine eyes sleep,

“ The oppressed, through thy hand of oppression, sleepless.

“ For thee, there is good advice, if thou wilt listen ;

“ But if thou wilt not hearken, thou thyself wilt become  
sorrowful.

“ Know,—how praised becomes a king

“ Whom the people praise in the Court.

740 “ What profit—the applause, at the head of the assembly,

“ The old woman,—cursing behind the spinning wheel.”

The villager thus spoke,—the sword above his head ;

The soul surrendered to the arrow of Fate.

The king, from the intoxication of carelessness, came to  
reason ;

The auspicious angel Surosh (Gabriel) whispered to his ear,

Saying :—“ Restrain the hand of torture from this old  
man ;

“ Suppose,—one slain, out of thousands of thousands  
(what then ?) ”

---

741 “ Safr kardan ” signifies—to surrender.

His head remained sometime in the collar (of reflection);  
After that, he filled his sleeve with pardon.

745 Took off his fetters, with his own hands;  
Kissed his head, and took him into his bosom.

Gave him greatness and lordship;      ~~And~~  
His welfare sprang forth from the branch of hope.

This story became related in the world;  
Good fortune goes behind the upright.

Thou wilt learn an adorned walk of life,—from wise men;  
(But) not to the same degree as from the ignorant (the  
enemy), fault-finding.

Hear thy own character from the enemy; because,  
In the friend's eye, whatever comes from thee is good.

750 Those singing praises are not thy friends;  
Those reproaching are thy friends.

It is a crime to give sugar to the sick one;  
When the bitter medicine is fit for him.

The one of sour face rebukes better,  
Than friends of pleasant disposition, of sweet temperament.

No one utters to thee better advice than this:  
If thou art wise, a hint is enough.

---

When the turn of the Khiláfat came to Mámún  
He purchased a damsel with a face as the moon.

---

744 In the 'Ik̄d-i-manẓúm, couplets 742-747 and 753-797 are omitted.

754 Mámún, one of the Khulafá of 'Abásiya, was the son of Harúnu-r-Rashíd, so often mentioned in the Arabian Nights.

755 In face, a sun ; in body, a rose ;  
In wisdom, wise,—a wanton one.

In the blood of lovers, her hand deeply imbrued ;  
Her finger-tips, jujube-stained.

Saffron—on the eye-brow, devotee-enchanted,—  
Was like the rainbow on the sun.

On the night of the rites of Venus, that enchanting toy,  
Húr-born,  
Perhaps gave not her body to Mámún's embrace.

The fire of anger fiercely seized him ;  
He wished to make her head two portions, like the Gemini.

760 She said :—" Lo ! my head, with the sharp sword,  
" Cast down ; but, exercise not sleeping and rising with  
me."

Mámún said :—" From whom, has injury reached thy heart ;  
" What feature of mine was disagreeable to thee ? "

She replied :—" If thou slayst me, or if thou cleavest my  
head

" (I must say)—from the smell of thy mouth, I am in  
distress.

" The sword of contest, and the arrow of oppression slay,  
" At once ; the smell of thy mouth, gradually."

Şarwar (Mámún) of happy fortune heard this speech ;  
He was greatly astonished, and sorely grieved.

---

57 " Kaus " signifies—a bow.

" Kazah " is the name of a devil.

" Kaus-i-Kazah " is Satan's bow ; and also the name of Rustam's bow.

In Persia, rain is precious. When the rainbow appears, rain usually ceases. The people then say that " Shaijan " has stopped the rain with his bow.



765 Was, all night, in this thought, and slept not ;  
Spoke, the next day, to the wise ones.

Those of every clime, constitution—understanding,—  
With every one of them, he spoke on every matter.

Although, at that time, his heart was vexed with her,  
He took medicine ; and, became fragrant of smell, rose-like.

He made the pari-faced one, companion and friend ;  
Saying :—" This one uttered my defect ; she is my friend."

In my opinion, that one is thy well-wisher,  
Who says :—" A thorn is in thy path."

770 To say to the road-lost—" Thou goest well,"  
Is a great cruelty and atrocious crime.

At that time, when they utter not before thee thy defect,  
Thou, from ignorance, considerst thy defect, skill.

Say not :—" The sweet honey is the superior sugar"  
To that one, for whom scammony is necessary.

How well did the druggist, one day, say :—  
" Is convalescence necessary to thee ? drink bitter  
medicine."

If sharbat is good for thee,  
Take, from Sa'dí, the bitter medicine of advice.

775 With the sieve of knowledge, sifted ;  
With the honey of devotion, mixed.

I have heard that, on account of a good man, a fakír,  
The heart of a proud king became troubled.

772 " Sakmuniya " is Greek ; in Arabic, it is called " Maḥmúdat."

The Persians say it is a bitter juice, possessing the power of purging  
the bile from the body.

Perhaps, on his tongue, a truth had passed;  
He became, through pride, enraged with him.

He sent him from the Court to the prison;  
For, the arm of a king is strong proved.

One of his friends said secretly to him (the fakir);—  
“It was not well to utter this speech.” He replied:—

780 “To cause God’s order to be accomplished is obedience to  
God;  
“I fear not the prison, which is for a moment.”

“That very moment, when this secret, in private, went forth  
(from his tongue),  
The tale also went to the ear of the king.

He laughed, saying:—“He entertains a foolish idea,  
“He knows not that he will die in this confinement.”

A slave brought that speech to the poor man;  
He said:—“Oh slave! say to Khusrau,

“I have not the load of grief on a wounded heart;  
“For the world, this very moment, is no more.

785 “If thou helpst me not, I am joyful;  
“If thou cutst off my head, grief comes not into my  
heart. *And*

“If thou art prosperous in command and treasure,  
“Another is dejected, in fear or grief.

“When we enter at the gate of death,  
“We become, in one week, together equal.

784 In some copies:—

Since, this very moment, the world is no more,  
Grief and joy are not present to the Darvesh.

“ Place not the heart on this empire of five days,

“ Consume not thyself, with the sighs of the people’s heart.

“ Did not the kings before thee collect together more than thou ?

“ In exercising injustice, they consumed the world.

790 “ Live even so, that they may commemorate thee with praise ;

“ May not recite curses, over thy grave, when thou diest.

“ In regard to a bad custom, it is unnecessary to lay laws ;

“ For they say :—May a curse be on him, who laid this evil custom !

“ But, if the Lord of Force raises his head,

“ Does not the dust of the grave in the end make his head low ? ”

The narrow-hearted one, by way of oppression, ordered—  
That they should dig out his tongue, from the back (of the neck).

The man, truths-knowing thus spoke

Saying :—“ I have no fear of this even that thou hast said. .

795 “ I have no grief of tonguelessness ;

“ For, I know that God understands the unspoken word.

“ And if, through tyranny, I suffer foodlessness,

—“ If, in the end it be well with me, what grief ?

“ The sound of mourning (for thy death) may be nuptial,

“ If thy end be good.”

---

A certain boxer had neither fortune nor victuals ;  
The means ready—neither for his evening nor for his  
morning repast.

On account of the cravings of his belly, he used to carry clay  
on his back ;  
For it is impossible to enjoy (gain) victuals, by means of  
the fist.

800 Through distress of fortune, always—  
His heart, grief-stricken ; his body, spindle-like.

For him, sometimes, battle with a malevolent world ;  
Sometimes, his face bitter, from distressed fortune.

Sometimes, from beholding the sweet pleasure of the (rich)  
people,  
The bitter water (tears) used to descend to his neck.

Sometimes, he used to weep on account of perplexed work,  
Saying :—“ No one experienced a more bitter life than  
this ! ”

The people eat honey, and bird, and lamb ;  
The surface of my bread sees not herbs.

805 If thou desirest justice,—this is not good,  
I naked ; but, to the cat, a coat (of fur).

How well would it have been, if my foot, in this clay-work,  
Had descended to the treasure of my heart's desire.

Perhaps, for a time I would have urged the desire (of  
lust) ;  
Would have scattered from myself the dust of affliction.

I heard that he was, one day, breaking up the earth ;  
He found a rotten chin-bone.

Within the dust, its joints dissevered ;  
The jewels of teeth scattered.

810 The tongueless mouth mysteriously uttered advice,  
Saying :—" Oh sir ! be content with want of sustenance.

" Is not this the state of the mouth, beneath the clay ?

" Suppose—sugar eaten ; or blood of the heart (grief)  
suffered (what then ?)

" Have not grief of time's revolution ;

" For much time will revolve without us."

That very moment, when this idea appeared to him,  
Grief placed aside its burden from his heart.

Saying :—" Oh spirit ! void of judgment, deliberation and  
sense,

" Endure the load of grief, and slay not thyself."

815 If a slave carries a load on his head ;  
Or if he rears his head to the summit of the sky,

At that moment, when his state becomes changed,  
In death, both ideas leave his head.

Grief and joy remain not ; but, <sup>but</sup>  
Requital for work and good name (work) remains.

Liberality, not diadem and throne, has permanence ;  
Oh one of good fortune !—give that this may remain after  
thee (in the world).

Rely not on country, and rank and pomp :  
For, they were before thee, and will be after thee.

820 Thou wishst not that thy country should come to con-  
fusion ?

It is necessary to suffer sorrow for both country and religion.

813 " Rú,e dádan " signifies—tawajjuh kardan ; mutawajjih shudan.  
In the first line, " khátir " signifies—ánchi ba dil khatúr kunád.

Scatter gold, since thou wishst not to leave the world,  
As Sa'dí scattered pearls (of counsel), when he had not  
gold.

---

They relate a story of a certain violence—scatterer,  
Who held sway over a country.

The day of man was, in his time, like the evening;  
At night, the hands of the pure were, through fear of him,  
in prayer.

All day, the good, through him, in calamity;  
At night, the hands of the pure, against him, in prayer.

825 Before the Shaikh of that time, a crowd of men  
Wept bitterly, on account of the tyrant's power,

Saying:—"Oh wise man of happy disposition!  
"Say to this young man,—Fear God!"

The Shaikh replied:—"I am loath (to utter) the name of  
God;

"For, every one is not worthy of His message."

Whomsoever thou seest apart from God,  
Oh Sir! reveal not to him the name of God.

It is sorrowful to speak of the knowledge (of God) with  
the mean;  
For, seed in salt soil is wasted.

830 When it affects him not, he considers thee an enemy;  
Grieves heartily, and vexes thee.

---

822 In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 822 to 880 are omitted.

Oh King! thou hast the custom of a right walk of life;  
The heart of the man, truth-speaking, is, on this account,  
firm.

Oh one of happy fortune! the seal-ring has a quality,—  
Such that, it takes an impression in wax, not in the hard  
stone.

It is not wonderful, if this tyrant, of me, heartily  
Grieves; for, he is a thief; and I, a watchman.

Thou art also guardian as to justice and equity;  
May the protection of God be thy guardian!

835 In the way of reason, thanks (of the people) are not for  
thee;

Grace, and obligation, and praise—for God.

When God holds thee, in service, in the work of goodness,  
He left thee, not abandoned, like others.

All are in the plain of struggle;  
But, not every one wins the ball of empire.

Thou didst not, by endeavour, gain Paradise;  
God created within thee, a disposition Paradise-like.

May thy heart be illumined, and time tranquil!  
May thy foot be firm, and dignity exalted!

840 Thy life, pleasant; and, thy conduct, (bent) on rectitude!  
Thy devotion, agreeable (to God); and, prayer, accepted!

---

So long as thy work prospers by deliberation,  
Courtesy to an enemy (is) better than contest.

---

831  
and  
834 }

The king alluded to is Abú Bakr.

When one cannot, by force, defeat the enemy ;  
With cajolery it is proper to close the door of strife.

• If there be fear of the injury of the enemy,  
Fasten his tongue with the charm of beneficence.

Scatter gold for the enemy, in place of crow's feet ;  
For, kindness makes blunt the sharp teeth.

845 When it is impossible to bite the hand, kiss it ;  
For, with superiors, the remedy is deceit and flattery,

Even as the friend, pay observance to the enemy,  
Whose skin, at the time of opportunity, one can flay ;

By right judgment, there came to bonds Rustam,  
From whose noose, Isfandiyár escaped not.

Exercise caution as to contest with the meanest person ;  
For, I have seen many a torrent, from a drop.

Express not—so long as thou canst,—a knot (frown) on  
• thy eyebrow ;  
For, the enemy though weak (is) better a friend.

850 His enemy may be fresh ; and, friend, wounded,—  
That one, whose enemies are (in number) more than  
friends.

Strive not with an army more powerful than thy own ;  
For, one cannot strike the fist on a lancet.

And, if thou art stronger, in contest, than he,  
It is not manly to exercise force against the feeble.

If thou art of elephant-strength, or of lion-claw,  
Peace is, in my opinion, better than strife.

When the hand is broken as to every artifice,  
It is lawful to carry the hand to the sharp sword.



855 If the enemy seeks peace, turn not aside the head ;  
And, if he seeks battle, turn not aside the rein.

For, if he shuts the door of conflict  
Thou hast the power and awe of ten thousand.

And, if he bring the foot of battle into the stirrup,  
The Ruler (God) will not desire from thee an account at  
the rising (Judgment Day).

Be thou his battle-opponent, when he seeks strife ;  
For with the malicious kindness is a mistake,

When thou speakst, with kindness and pleasantness, to  
the mean,  
His pride and obstinacy become greater.

860 With Arab-steeds and manly men,  
Bring forth the dust (of destruction) from the nature of  
the enemy.

But, if he returns, with gentleness and understanding,  
Speak not to him, with severity and anger and harshness.

When the enemy enters at thy door, with submission,  
Put out malice from thy heart ; and, anger from thy head.

When safety demands, practice the trade of liberality ;  
Pardon ; but, reflect on his (possible) deceit.

Turn not away from the deliberations of old men ;  
For, one years-endured is work-experienced.

865 They pluck up the brazen foundations from its root,—  
Young men with the sword ; and, old men with judgment.

Consider a place of retreat, in the heart of battle ;  
Of that, what knowst thou,—that he may be conqueror?

When thou beholdest the enemy in discord,  
Give not, alone, thy sweet life to the wind.

And, if thou art on one side of the army, strive to go  
(from the slaughter) ;  
But, if in the midst (of the enemy), put on the guise of  
the enemy.

And, if thou art a thousand, and the enemy (only) two  
hundred,  
Stand not in the enemy's territory, when it becomes night.

870 In the dark night, fifty horsemen, from ambuscade,  
Will, with terror, rend the earth like five hundred.

When thou wishst to travel the road at night,  
Be cautious first of ambuscade.

When one day's march between two armies  
Remains,—pitch thy tent in some place.

If he displays aggression, have no fear ;  
And if he be Afrásiyáb, pluck forth his brains.

Knowst thou not, that when the enemy pursues one's day's  
march,  
His grasp of force remains not.

875 Thou tranquil,—strike at the wearied army ;  
For, the ignorant one practised oppression against his own  
body.

When thou hast defeated the enemy, cast down the  
standard,  
That his wound may not come together again (heal).

Urge not far, in rear of the routed army ;  
It is not fit that thou shouldst go far from thy companions.

Thou mayst behold, the air cloud-like, from the dust of  
conflict ;  
With javelin and sword they will gather around thee.

Let not the army urge in pursuit of plunder,  
Lest that (the place) behind the king's back be void.

880 For the army, the guardianship of the monarch  
Is better than battle, in the circle of contest.

The warrior, who has once showed ardour (in battle),  
It is proper to increase (his dignity), according to his  
worth.

That, the next time, he may place his heart on destruction;  
May have no fear of contest with the (tribe of) Ya,júj.

Keep the soldier happy, in peace;  
That he may be of use in the time of distress.

Kiss the hand of fighting men, now,  
Not, at the time when the enemy beats the war-drum.

885 The soldier, whose duty is (lies) not in (getting) victuals,—  
Why should he, on the day of battle, place his heart on  
death?

From the enemy's hand, the quarters of the country,  
Keep by the army; and, the army, by wealth.

Of the king, the hand is bold against an enemy,  
When the army is tranquil of heart, and satisfied.

They enjoy the price of their own heads;  
It is not right, that they should endure severity.

When they keep pay from the soldier;  
He is loth to carry his hand to the sharp sword.

890 What manliness may he exhibit, in the battle-ranks,  
When his hand is empty, and work despised?

Send warriors to the contest with the enemy;  
Send lions to the conflict with lions.

---

891 In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 891-971 are omitted.

Execute work, according to the judgment of those world-experienced ;

For, the old wolf is experienced in hunting.

Fear not the young men, sword-striking ;  
Be cautious of the old men of much science.

The young men, elephant-overthrowing, lion-seizing,  
Know not the artifices of the old fox.

895 The man, world-experienced, is wise ;  
For, he has experienced much the hot and cold (vicissitudes) of life.

Young men, worthy of good fortune,  
Turn not aside their heads from the saying of old men.

If further, a well ordered kingdom be necessary,  
Give not a great work to an aspirant.

Make none leader of the army, save that one,  
Who may have been, in many battles.

Entrust not a difficult matter to the young ;  
For, one cannot break the anvil with the fist.

900 Peasant-cherishing and being chief of an army,  
Are not work of sport and folly.

Thou wishst not that time should be lost ?  
Entrust not work to one, work-unseen.

The hunting-dog turns not his face from the panther ;  
The tiger, inexperienced in battle, fears the fox.

When the son is brought up to hunting,  
He fears not, when contest meets him.

In wrestling, and hunting, and shooting at a mark, and  
ball-play,

A man becomes a warrior, and contest-seeker.

905 One reared in the hot bath, and pleasure, and luxury,  
Will fear, when he sees the door of conflict open.

Two men place him in the saddle;  
It may be a boy strikes him to the earth.

The one, whose back thou seest in the day of battle,  
Slay,—if the enemy slay him not in the ranks.

An impotent one is better than the swordsman,  
Who, in the battle-day, turns away his head, woman-like.

How well said the hero Gurgín to his own son,  
When he (the son) shut up the bow-case, and quiver of  
battle :—

910 “ If, women-like, thou wilt seek flight,  
“ Go not (to the battle-field); spill not the honour of  
fighting men.”

The single horseman, who, in battle, showed his back,  
Slew not himself, but those of renown.

Bravery comes not,—save from those two friends,  
Who fell, in the circle of conquest.

Two of the same quality, of the same table, of the same  
speech,  
Will strive mightily in the heart of conflict.

For shame comes to him of fleeing from before the  
arrow,—  
The brother, a captive in the enemy's grasp.

915 When thou seest that friends are not friends (in contest),  
Consider flight from the battle-field,—gain.

---

The first line means :—

Though by reason of his size it requires two men to place him, &c.

Oh king, territory-conquering ! cherish two persons—  
One a man of arm (strong) ; the other, a man of judgment.

Those carry of the ball of empire from those renowned,  
Who cherish the wise man and sword-man.

Whoever exercised not the pen and the sword,  
If he dies,—say not over him :—" Alas ! "

Take care of the pen-striker (pen-man) and sword-striker  
(sword-man) ;  
Not the musician ; for manliness comes not from the striker.

920 This is not manliness,—the enemy in the affairs of war ;  
Thou,—confused with the wine-cup, and sound of the  
harp.

Possessed of sovereignty, sate down to play, many a one  
Whose wealth went in play from the hand.

---

I say not—fear battle with the enemy ;  
Fear rather him, who is in the state of peace.

Many a one recited, in the day, the versè of peace ;  
(And) urged, when it became night, his army at the  
sleeper's head.

Warriors sleep mail-clad ;  
Since, the couch is the sleeping-place of women.

Within the tent, one, sword-striking,  
925 Sleeps not naked (unarmed), like women in the house.

It is necessary to prepare secretly for war ;  
So that one can secretly assault the enemy.

Caution is the business of men acquainted with work ;  
The advanced guard is the brazen fence of the army-place.

---

919 In the second line, "zan" signifies—striker, possibly a harp-striker  
or player ; and also woman.

Between two ill-wishers of short hand (weak),  
It is not wisdom, to sit secure.

Because, if both, together secretly, deliberate,—  
Their short hand becomes long (powerful).

930 Keep one engaged with deceit;  
Bring forth the destruction of the other's existence.

If an enemy chooses war,  
Spill his blood, with the sword of deliberation.

Go; accept friendship with his enemy;  
That the shirt on his body may be a prison.

When discord occurs in the enemy's army,  
Place thou thy own sword, in the scabbard.

When wolves approve of each other's injury,  
The sheep repose in the midst.

935 When the enemy becomes engaged with enemy,  
Sit down, in ease of heart, with thy friend.

When thou liftst up the sword of contest,  
Look out, secretly, for the path of peace.

Because army-leaders, helmet-cleaving,  
Seek secretly peace; and, openly, the battle-ranks.

Seek secretly (in friendship) the heart of the man of the  
battle-field;

For, it may be, that he may fall (in friendship) at thy  
feet.

When an officer of rank of the enemy falls to thy grasp,  
It is proper to exercise delay in slaying him.

40 For, it may happen that a chief of this half (thy own army)  
May remain a captive, in bonds.

If thou slayst this wounded captive,  
Thou wilt not again behold thy own captive.

Fears he not that Heaven's revolution may make captive  
him,  
Who exercises violence towards captives?

That one is hand-seizer (helper) of captives,  
Who himself may have been a captive in bondage.

If a chief places his head on thy writing (of command),—  
When thou keepst him well, another chief places his head.

945 If thou, secretly, bringst to thy hand ten hearts,  
It is better than that thou shouldst execute a hundred  
assaults.

---

If a relation of the enemy be friendly to thee,  
Beware; be not secure of craftiness.

Because, his heart becomes torn for vengeance against thee.  
When, memory of the love of his own relation comes to  
him.

Consider not the sweet words of an enemy;  
For, it is possible, there is poison in the honey.

That one took his life safe from the trouble of the enemy,  
Who reckoned friends as enemies.

950 That knave preserves the pearl in his purse,  
Who considers all people purse-cuts.

The soldier, who is an offender against the Amír,  
So long as thou canst,—take not into service.

He knew not gratitude towards his own chief;  
He knows not thee also: be afraid of his deceit.



Hold (consider) him not strong as to oath and covenant;  
 Appoint a secret watchman over him.

Make long the tether of the aspirant;  
 Break it not, lest thou shouldst not see him again.

955 When, in battle and siege, the enemy's country,  
 Thou seizest,—consign it to the prisoners.

Because, when a captive plunges his teeth in blood,  
 He drinks blood from the tyrant's throat.

When thou pluckst away a territory from the enemy's  
 clutch,  
 Keep the peasantry in more order than he.

For, if he beats open the door of conflict,  
 The people will pluck out the essence of his brain.

But, if thou causest injury to the citizens,  
 Shut not (vainly) the city-gate in the enemy's face.

960 Say not :—" The enemy, sword-striking, is at the gate !"  
 When the enemy's partner is within the city.

Essay with deliberation battle with the enemy ;  
 Reflect on counsel ; and, conceal thy resolution.

Reveal not the secret to every one ;  
 For, I have seen many a cup-sharer, a spy.

Sikandar, who waged war with the Easterns,  
 Kept, they say, his tent-door towards the west.

When Bahman wished to go to Zâwulistân,  
 He cast a rumour of (his going to the) left, and went to  
 the right.

---

954 If a mistake occurs, overlook it ; for, if thou becometh angry and  
 makest severance of his hope,—thou wilt not see him again.

965 If one, besides thee, knows what thy resolve is,—  
 It is fit to weep over that judgment, and knowledge, and  
 resolution.

Exercise liberality ;—neither conflict, nor rancour,—  
 That thou mayst bring a world beneath thy signet-ring.

When a work prospers through courtesy and pleasantness,  
 What need of severity and arrogance ?

Thou wishest not, that thy heart should be sorrowful?  
 Bring forth from bondage the hearts of those sorrowful.

The army is not powerful by the arm ;  
 Go ; ask a blessing from the feeble.

970 The prayer of the hopeful weak ones  
 Is of more avail than the manly arm. *See 42.*

Whosoever takes to the darwesh, his request for aid,  
 If he strikes at Firídún, he would overcome him.

---

971 In some copies, "o" occurs in place of "az," which, otherwise, is redundant.

## CHAPTER II.

## ON BENEFICENCE.

1 If thou art wise, incline to truth;  
 For truth, not the semblance, remains in its place.

To whomsoever, there was neither knowledge, nor liberality,  
 nor piety,—  
 In his form, there was no reality.

Beneath the clay, sleeps at ease that one,  
 By whom, men sleep tranquil at heart.

Suffer thy own grief in life; for the relation,  
 Through his own avarice, busies not himself with one dead.

5 Give now gold and silver, which is thine;  
 For, after thy (death), it is out of thy command.

Thou wishest not, that thou shouldst be distressed in  
 heart?  
 Put not out of thy heart those distressed.

---

1 In the 'Tkd-i-manẓûm, complets 1 to 28 are omitted.

Scatter treasure in alms, to-day, without delay ;  
For, to-morrow, the key is not in thy hand.

Take away with thy self, thy own road-provisions ;  
For compassion (after death) comes from neither son, nor  
wife.

That one takes away the ball of empire from this world,  
Who took, with himself, a portion to the future world.

10 With sympathy, like my finger-tip,  
No one in the world scratches my back.

Place now, on the palm of the hand, whatever there is ;  
Lest that, to-morrow (the Judgment Day) thou shouldst  
with the teeth bite the back of the hand.

Strive as to covering the shame of the darwesh,  
That the veil of God may be thy secret (defect) -concealer.

Turn not the foreigner portionless from thy door,  
Lest that thou shouldst become a wanderer (in beggary) at  
doors.

The great one causes alms to reach the indigent ;  
For he fears that he may become necessitous (as to the  
need of others).

15 Look into the state of the heart of those wearied ;  
For thy heart may, perhaps, one day be broken.

Make the hearts of those dejected happy ;  
Remember the day of helplessness (the Judgment Day).

Thou art not a beggar at the doors of others ;  
Drive not, in thanks to God, a beggar from thy door.

---

Cast protection over the head of the one father-dead ;  
Scatter his dust (of affliction), and pluck out his thorn.

Knowst thou not, how very dejected his state was ?  
May a rootless tree be ever green ?

20 When thou seest an orphan, head lowered in front (from  
grief),

Give not a kiss to the face of thy own son.

If the orphan weeps, who buys for his consolation ?

And, if he becomes angry, who leads him back (to  
quietude) ?

Beware ! that he weep not ; for, the great throne of God  
Keeps trembling, when the orphan weeps.

Pluck out, with kindness, the tear from his pure eye ;  
Scatter, with compassion, the dust (of affliction) from his  
face.

If his (the father's) protection departed from over his  
head,

Do thou cherish him, with thy own protection.

25 I esteemed my head crown-worthy, at that time,  
When, I held my head in my father's bosom.

If a fly had sate on my body,  
The heart of some would have become distressed.

If now, enemies should bear me away captive,  
None of my friends is a helper.

For me, is acquaintance with the sorrows of orphans,  
For, in childhood, my father departed (in death), from my  
head.

---

A certain one plucked out a thorn from an orphan's  
foot ;

The Khujand Chief, saw him, in a dream :—

---

19 The father is the root, the son the branches of the tree. A tree's  
freshness is due to its root.

29 Khujand is a village in the country of Máwara, u-n-nahr, between  
the Jíhún and Sífún rivers.

30 He was talking and sauntering in the gardens of Paradise,  
Saying :—"How many roses blossomed from that thorn !"

So long as thou canst, be not free from mercy ;  
For they bear pity to thee, when thou bearest pity.

When thou hast done a favour, be not self-worshipping,  
Saying :—"I am a superior ; and, that other an inferior."

Say not :—"The sword of Time has cast him !"  
For, the sword of Time is yet drawn.

When thou seest a thousand persons, prayer-uttering for  
the empire,  
Give thanks to God for favours.

35 For the reason that many men have expectation from thee,  
Thou hast expectation at the hand of none.

I have said that liberality is the character of chiefs ;  
I uttered a mistake ;—it is the quality of prophets !

I have heard that, one week, a son of the road (a traveller)  
Came not to the guest-house of (Ibráhím) the friend of  
God.

Through his happy disposition, he used not to eat in the  
morning,  
Unless one, foodless, came from the path (of travel).

He went out, and looked in every direction ;  
Glanced in the quarters of the valley ; and saw :—

40 One, willow-like, in solitude, in the desert ;  
His head and hair white with the snow of old age.

For consolation, he said to him :—" Marhabá ! "

Uttered, according to the custom of the liberal, the invitation,

Saying :—" Oh pupil of my eyes !

" Do me a favour, as to bread and salt."

He said, " Yes " ; and sprang up and lifted his feet ;

For, he knew his temperament :— on him be peace !

The guards of the guest-house of Ibráhím

Placed the abject old man, with respect.

45 He ordered ; and, they arranged the table ;  
All sate around.

When the company began :—" Bismi-llah ! "

A word from the old man reached not his ear.

He spoke to him, thus :—" Oh old man of ancient days !

" I behold not thy truth and heart-burning, like old men.

" When thou eatst food, is it not the custom

" That [thou shouldst take the name of the Lord of  
Victuals ? "

He said :—" I accept not a religion,

" Which I have not heard from the old men, fire-wor-  
shipping."

50 The prophet of good omen knew

That the old man, of state-become ruined, was a Gabr.

He drove him away, with contempt, when he saw him a  
stranger (to Islám) ;

Far to the pure, the filthy is forbidden.

The angel Surosh came from the glorious Omnipotent,

With majesty, reproaching, saying :—" Oh friend of God !

---

In Arabic, " Marhabá " ; in Persian, " Khúsh Ámadí."

“ I had for a hundred years given him victuals and life ;  
 “ Abhorrence of him comes to thee, in a moment.

“ If he takes his adoration to the fire,  
 “ Why withdrawst thou thy hand of magnanimity ? ”

55 Make not a knot at the head of the ligature of beneficence,  
 Saying :—“ This one is of fraud and deceit : and, that one  
 of treachery and guile.”

The man, Kurán-knowing, does injury,  
 When he sells, for bread, the Kurán and sound doctrine.

Where do wisdom and law give the decision,  
 That one of wisdom should give religion for the world ?

But, do thou take ; because the wise man  
 Buys gladly from those cheap-selling.

---

One, tongue-knowing, came to a pious man,  
 Saying :—“ I have stuck firmly in the mire.

60 “ Ten dirams of a mean one are (weighing) on me,  
 “ In such a way that a fourth part of them is ten mans on  
 my heart.

“ Through him, all night, my state distracted ;  
 “ All day, (he is) shadow-like, behind me.

“ From words, heart-confounding, he has made  
 “ A wound, like a house-door, within my heart.

“ Perhaps since he was born of his mother, God  
 “ Gave not (to him) anything save these ten dirams.

“ Of the book of Religion, Alif unknown ;  
 “ Unread, save the chapter :—Spend not.

---

55 In the 'Ik̄d-i-manẓúm, couplets 55 to 121 are omitted.

60 The diram=0·08248 lbs.

man=13·0083 „

68 Alif is the first letter of the alphabet.



65 “ The sun raised not its head a single day above the  
mountain

“ That that scoundrel knocked not at my door.

“ I am in reflection,—What liberal one

“ May take my hand (help me) with silver, from that one  
of stone heart.”

The old man of happy disposition heard this speech,  
He placed two gold coins in his sleeve.

The gold fell into the hand of the tale-teller ;  
He went out, thence,—a face fresh like gold.

One said :—“ Oh Shaikh ! knowst thou not, who this is ?  
“ It is not proper to weep over him, if he dies

70 “ A beggar, who (by deceit) places a saddle on the male  
lion ;

“ Who places (on one side) the knight and queen of Abú-  
Zaid (the chess-player).”

The 'ábid was confounded, saying :—“ Be silent !

“ Thou art not a man of tongue ; listen !

“ If what I thought (regarding him) was right

“ I preserved his honour from the people.

“ If he practised impudence and hypocrisy,

“ Thou knowst not that he beguiled me.

“ For, I preserved my own honour ;

“ From the hand of such a deceiver, foolishness-uttering.”

---

70 “ Asp va farzín nihádan ” signifies—asp va farzín ba tarḥ dádán va  
bází rá burdan.

- 75 Spend silver and gold on the bad and the good ;  
For, this is the trade of liberality ; and, that the repelling  
of evil.

Happy he who, in the society of the wise,  
Learns the qualities of the pious.

Wisdom, and judgment, and deliberation, and sense are  
thine ;  
Listen, with reverence, to Sa'dí's advice.

Because, Sa'dí, for the most part, has words (of counsel)  
in this fashion ;  
Not—as to eye, and ringlet, and lobe of the ear, and mole  
(of lovely ones).

---

One departed (from the world), and a hundred thousand  
dínars of his,  
The heir, a sensible pious man, took.

- 80 He clutched not his hand on the gold, like the misers ;  
He took off the fastening from it, like the nobles.

The darvesh used not to be empty at his door ;  
Nor, the traveller, within his guest-house.

He made the heart of stranger and relation happy ;  
Tied not up the gold, like his father.

One, reproach-making, said to him :—" Oh one of wind-  
hand !

" Make not altogether scattered what treasure there is.

" Gold, and consequential airs, and favour, remain not  
long.

" Perhaps, no one has told thee this tale ?

- 
- 75 Expenditure on the good is liberality ; on the bad, the repelling of  
evil.

85 " In these days, a certain Zāhid, to his son,  
 " I heard—kept saying—‘ Oh soul of father !

" ‘ Go alone ; and be house-emptying ;  
 " ‘ Be liberal, and wealth-dispersing.’

" The son was fore-seeing and work-experienced,  
 " He praised his father, saying :—‘ Oh one of good judgment!

" ‘ In one year, one can gather together the harvest ;  
 " ‘ To burn it in a moment, is not manliness.’

" When thou hast no patience, as to straitened circumstances,  
 " Consider the account, in the plenteous season.

90 " How well spoke the lady of the village to her daughter,  
 " Saying :—‘ Put aside, in the time of plenty, means for adversity.

" ‘ Keep full, at all times, the water-bag and pitcher ;  
 " ‘ For, the rivulet in the village is not always running.’

" By this world, one can obtain the next ;  
 " By gold, one can turn aside a lion-grasp.

" If thou art straitened, go not before a friend ;  
 " But, if thou hast silver, come and bring (that silver).

" If thou placest thy face, on the dust of his feet,  
 " He utters no reply to thee, with empty hands.

95 " The lord of gold plucks out the demon’s eye ;  
 " He brings the jinn Sahar, by craft, to his net.

86 " *Khāna-pardāz* " signifies—tamām kunanda, casbāb-i-*khāna*.

" *Mujarrd* " signifies—one who flings away all his goods that he may devote himself to God.

95 Sahar is the jinn who obtained possession of Sulaiman’s ring.

“ Associate not, empty-handed, with lovely ones ;  
 “ For without anything, a man is not worth anything.

“ The hope of the empty-handed one prospers not ;  
 “ With gold thou mayst pluck out the eye of the white  
 demon.

“ Scatter not gold, all at once, on friends ;  
 “ Be in contemplation of the trouble of the enemy.

“ And if, on the palm of the hand, thou placest whatever  
 thou hast,  
 “ In the time of need, thou wilt remain empty (handed).

100 “ By thy effort, the beggars—ever strong,  
 “ Become not ; I fear, thou dost become lean.”

When the forbiddener of liberality uttered this tale,  
 The young man's vein, through anger, slept not.

He became perplexed in heart as to that censorious one ;  
 Was confounded, and said :—“ Oh foolish talker !

“ The power that is around me,  
 “ My father said—was the heritage of my grandfather.

“ Did they not first preserve it ?  
 “ They died, in regret ; and, left it.

105 “ To my hand, did not my father's property fall,  
 “ That it might fall after me to my son's hand ? ”

It is best indeed that men should to-day enjoy ;  
 For, to-morrow, after me, they will take it away in rapine.

---

97 Dev-Safaed is the name of a hero of Mázandaran, whom Rustam, son of Zál, slew.

Eat, and clothe thyself, and bestow, and cause ease to  
arrive;

Why keepest thou (money) for the sake of the people?

The lords of judgment, (by alms) take away with them-  
selves from the world;

The base one remains, in regret, in his place.

With this world, thou canst buy the future world;

Oh my soul! purchase; and, if not, suffer regret.

Gold and wealth are of use to that one,

110 Who makes the wall of the future world, gold decorated.

He (the heir) enjoyed and gave away, so that those endowed  
with vision

Beheld the marks of that money-loss in him.

A person, out of nobleness, praised him,

Saying:—"In the path of God, thou enduredst much  
grief."

Head in the collar of shame, he kept saying:—

"What (good deed) did I, to which one can attach the  
heart?

"The hope that I have is in the grace of God;

"For, to exercise reliance on my own effort is a crime."

Religion is this indeed,—that people of truth

115 Are good-doers, and (their own) fault-perceivers.

The Shaikhs have, all night, uttered prayers;

Have, in the morning, spread the prayer-carpet.

In the name of manliness! listen to the words of men;

Not Sa'dí; but, of Sahrwadí, hear.

---

117 Shaikh Shahábu-d-dín Abú Hifz 'Umar, son of Muḥammadu-l-Bakr íu-  
s-Saharwadí, was of the offspring of Abú Bakr Sadík, the Khalífá.

For me the shaikh of knowledge, the spiritual guide,  
 Shaháb,  
 Uttered two maxims of counsel,—boat on the water :—

“ One,—be not in the assembly of those evil-viewing ;  
 “ The other,—be not in the lust of self-beholding.”

120 One night, I know, that, from fear of hell, Shaháb slept  
 not ;

In the morning, it came to my ear,—that he said :—

“ How well would it have been, if hell had been full of me ;  
 “ Perhaps, for others, there might have been escape !”

---

Once upon a time, a wife lamented to her husband,  
 Saying :—“ Purchase not again bread from the general  
 vendor of the street.

“ Go to the market of the wheat-sellers.  
 “ For, this is a barley-seller, wheat-exhibiting.

“ Not on account of purchasers, but from a swarm of flies,  
 “ No one has seen his face for a week.”

125 With heartiness, that indigent man,  
 To his wife, said :—“ Oh light (of my eyes) ! be content.

“ In hope of us, the vendor took here a shop ;  
 “ It is not manliness, to take back from him profit.”

Take the path of good, noble men ;  
 When thou art erect, seize the hand of the fallen.

Bestow ; for, those who are men of God  
 Are the purchasers (at) of the shop without splendour.

---

His connection with Sufism was through his uncle Abú-n-Najíb Saharwadí. He attained to the society of Shaikh 'Abdu-l-Kádir of Gílan, and many others. His birth occurred in the month Rajab in the Muḥammadan year 539 ; and death in 630.

Shaikh Sa'dí enjoyed his society ; and travelled, by water, with him.

If thou desirest truth,—the saint ('Alí) is the generous man ;  
Liberality is the profession of 'Alí, king of men.

---

130 I have heard that an old man, on the road to Hijáz,  
Used to make two prayer-motions, at every step.

So impetuous in the path of God,  
That he used not to pluck the ghílán thorn from his foot.

At length from temptation, heart-disturbing,  
His work seemed good in his sight.

By the craft of Iblís, he fell into the pit (of pride),  
Saying :—" One cannot go on a road, better than this."

If the mercy of God had not found him,  
Pride would have turned his head from the path (of religion).

135 An angelic messenger gave voice, from the invisible,  
Saying :—" Oh one of happy fortune ! of good disposition !

" If thou hast performed devotion, think not,  
" That thou hast brought a rarity to this court.

" By beneficence a heart tranquil making,  
" Is better than a thousand sacred inclinations of the head  
at every stage."

---

A wife thus spoke (to her husband) an officer of the Sultán,  
Saying :—" Oh fortunate one ! arise ; knock at the door of  
food.

" Go ; so that they may give thee a portion from the  
(Sultán's) tray ;  
" For, the children are looking to thee for food.

He said :—" To-day, the kitchen is cold ;  
" For, the Sultán made the resolve of fast, at night."

The wife, through helplessness, cast down her head;  
Heart torn with hunger, she kept saying to herself :—

“ What did the Sultán wish from this fast-talking,  
“ The breaking of which is the festival of my children ? ”

The devourer, from whose hand liberality issues,  
Is better than one, who, world-worshipping, perpetually  
fasts.

Fast-keeping is reserved for him,  
Who gives, to the wearied one, the bread of the morning  
meal.

145 Otherwise, what need that thou shouldst endure the trouble  
(of fasting) ;  
Shouldst keep back from thyself (food in the day) ; and  
shouldst eat it (at night) ?

The imaginings of the ignorant one, sitting in solitude !  
He confounds, at length, infidelity and religion.

Purity is in water ; and, also, in the mirror ;  
But, discretion is necessary for purity.

---

To a certain one, liberality was ; but power was not ;  
Means of subsistence, to the extent of his generosity, were  
not.

Let not the mean one be lord of wealth !  
Let not straitened means be to the generous man !

150 To him, to whom lofty spirit chances,  
The object of his desire seldom falls within the noose.

Like the pouring torrent, which, in a mountainous country,  
Takes not ease in the midst of the heights.



He exercised not liberality, according to his means ;  
On this account, assuredly, he used to be of small worth.

One straitened wrote to him two words,  
Saying :—“ Oh one of happy end, of auspicious tempera-  
ment !

“ Take my hand (help me) once with some dirams ;  
“ For, it is some time that I have been in prison.”

155 The request was, in his eye, of no value ;  
But, in his hand, there was not the smallest coin.

He sent a man to the enemies of the captive,  
Saying :—“ Oh men of good name, and noble !

“ Restrain, for a little, your hands from his skirt ;  
“ And if he flies, security for him (is) on me.”

And, thence, he came to the prison, saying :—“ Arise !  
“ Flee from this city, so long as thou hast feet.”

When the sparrow beheld the cage-door open,  
Repose within it remained not to it, a moment.

160 Like the zephyr-wind, from that land he travelled ;  
Such travelling, that the wind would not have reached the  
dust of his feet.

They, at once, seized the generous man,  
Saying :—“ Thou mayst obtain the silver, or the man.”

152 A poet has said :—

“ Last night, in a dream, I beheld money.  
I said : ‘ Why comest thou not to me ? ’  
The money replied : ‘ Thou recognisest not my worth ;  
Thou givest, in liberality, to this and that.  
Misers know my value ;  
I therefore go to the misers. ’ ”

He took, in helplessness, the path to the prison;  
For, one cannot take the bird, gone from the cage.

I heard that he remained some time in prison;  
He neither wrote to any one a complaint; nor, uttered a  
lament.

Times, he reposed not; nights, slept not;  
A devotee passed by him, and said:—

165 “ I think not thou devourest the property of man;  
“ What chanced to thee, that thou art in prison ? ”

He said:—“ Oh comrade of happy spirit !

“ I enjoyed, by fraud, the property of no one.

“ I beheld one, powerless, torn by captivity;

“ I beheld no release for him, save by my own confinement.

“ It seemed, in my opinion, not proper,

“ I, at ease; another, in the noose (of torment). ”

At length, he died; and, took away a good name;

How excellent, the life of him, whose name died not !

170 Beneath the clay,—a body dead, a heart alive;  
Is better than a world alive, heart dead.

The living heart never becomes destroyed;

If, the body of the living heart dies,—what matter ?

A certain one found, in the desert, a thirsty dog;  
He found not beyond a spark of life in him.

He of approved religion made a cap-bucket;  
Bound to it his own turban, rope-like.

---

171 “ Zinda-dil ” signifies—roshan-dil wa neko kár.  
“ Murda-dil ” signifies—tárík-dil wa bad-kár.

Bound his loins in service ; and stretched forth his arm ;  
Gave a little water to the powerless dog.

; The Prophet gave intelligence of the man's state,  
Saying :—"The Ruler (God) pardoned his sins."

Ho ! if thou art a tyrant, reflect ;  
Choose fidelity ; exercise liberality.

How does liberality become lost to the good man,  
Since he lost not goodness done to a dog ?

Pactise liberality so far as it may (suitably) come from thy  
hand,  
The world-keeper closes the door of beneficence on none.

To bestow from the treasury, to the extent of an ox's skin  
of gold,  
Is not like half a dang from the hand of toil.

Every one carries a load suitable to his strength ;  
The locust's foot is heavy to the ant.

Oh one of happy fortune ! do good to the people,  
That to-morrow, (the Judgment Day) God may not take  
hard (measures) with thee.

If he come from his feet (fall), he remains not captive,  
Who was hand-seizer (helper) of the fallen.

Give not, with rebuke, an order to the slave ;  
For, it may be that he may fall (come) to order-giving.

When thy majesty and rank are lasting  
Exercise not violence on the weakness of the common dar-  
wesh ;

For, it may happen that he becomes possessed of rank and  
majesty ;  
Like the pawn, that suddenly becomes a queen (at chess).

Listen to the counsel of men, far-seeing;  
 They scatter not the seed of rancour, in any heart.

The lord of the harvest suffers loss,  
 When he displays arrogance towards the corn-gleaners.

Fears he not that they (the angels) may give wealth to the  
 wretched one;  
 And from that one place the load of grief on the heart of  
 this one?

Many strong ones,—who fell suddenly;  
 Many a fallen one,—Fortune assisted.

190 It is not proper to break the hearts of inferiors;  
 Lest that, one day, thou shouldst become an inferior.

A certain darvesh complained of weakness of state,  
 To one of stern face, lord of wealth.

The one of black heart gave him neither dínárs, nor dāngs;  
 (And) shouted at him, moreover, in anger.

The beggar's heart, from his violence, bled.  
 He raised his head, with grief, and said:—"Oh wonder!

"Why, indeed is the rich man of severe visage?  
 "Perhaps, he fears not the bitterness of begging."

195 The one of short sight ordered,—so that his slave  
 Drove him away, with contempt, and utter scorn.

By not offering thanks to the Omnipotent,  
 I heard that Fortune turned from him.

188 That refers to the wretched one; this, to the arrogant one.

192 "Sar-bar" is a small load placed on a large load; the word is here metaphorically used.

His greatness placed its head towards ruin ;  
Mercury put his pen in the ink (in record against him).

Wretchedness made him sit naked, like garlic ;  
It left him neither chattels nor baggage-taker (the ass).

God's decree made him, through poverty, sit, dust on the  
head ;

Juggler-like, purse and hand empty.

200 His state, head to foot, became of another kind ;  
Some time passed on (after) this occurrence.

His slave fell to the hand of a liberal one.  
Generous of heart, and hand ; and luminous of tempera-  
ment.

By the sight of the wretch of overturned state,  
He used to be as much pleased, as the poor one with wealth.

A certain one sought, at night-time, a morsel at his door ;  
From hardship-enduring, his steps were slow.

The lord of gift-ordered the slave,

Saying :—" Make the dejected one happy."

205 When he carried to him a portion from the table ;  
He involuntarily raised a cry.

He returned, heart-broken, to his master,  
Tears on his face, mystery revealing.

The chief of happy temperament inquired,  
Saying :—" From whose violence, came these tears on thy  
face ? "

He said :—" My heart sorely grieved,  
" At the state of this old man of distracted fortune.

" For, in former times, I was his slave ;

" He,—the lord of goods and property, and silver.

- 210 “ When his hand, from honour and luxury, became short,  
 “ He makes long the hand of begging at doors.”

He laughed and said :—“ Oh son ! it is no violence ;  
 “ For the revolution of Time, there is oppression against  
 none.

“ Is he not that merchant of stern countenance,  
 “ Who used, from pride, to bear his head against the sky ?

“ I am that one, whom he drove, that day, from his door ;  
 “ The world's revolution has placed him in my day (state).

“ The sky looked, again, towards me ;  
 “ It scattered the dust of grief from my face.”

- 215 If God closes one door, in wisdom,  
 He opens another, in grace and liberality.

Many a poor one, foodless, became satiated ;  
 Many a work of the rich one became overturned.

---

Hear a trait of good men,  
 If thou art a good man, and of manly gait.

When Shiblí, from the shop of the wheat-seller,  
 Carried a wallet of wheat, on his back, to the village,

He glanced ; he beheld, in that wheat, an ant,  
 That ran, head-revolving, in every corner.

---

213 See couplet 195.

219 Abú Bakru-sh-Shiblí was Ja'ffar, the Egyptian, son of Yúnis. He came to Baghdád ; repented of his sins in the assembly *Khair-Mizáj* ; was the disciple of Saint Juníd, a learned man, lawyer, and adviser ; was of the sect of Málík ; was born in A.H. 247, and died in A.H. 334, at the age of eighty-seven years.

220 He could not sleep, at night, for pity of that ant ;  
He brought it back to its own dwelling, and said :—

“ It is not manliness that this wounded ant,  
“ I should cause to be separated from its dwelling.”

Keep tranquil the hearts of those distressed,  
That tranquillity, from time, may be thine.

How well said Firdausí of pure birth,  
—May mercy be on that pure tomb !—

“ Wound not the ant, that is the grain-carrier ;  
“ For, it also has life ; and, life is pleasant.”

225 He is of black vitals, and of stone-heart,  
Who wishes that an ant may be of straitened-heart.

Strike not the hand of force on the head of the powerless,  
Lest that thou shouldst, one day, fall ant-like beneath his  
foot.

226 The candle bestowed no pity on the moth's state ;  
Behold how it (the candle) burned in the assembly !

I have assumed,—many are less powerful than thou ;  
Also there is a certain one, in the end, more powerful than  
thou.

---

Oh son ! bestow ; for, the one man-born, a prey,  
One can make by benefits ; and, the wild beast, by re-  
straint.

---

223 The second line is uttered by Sa'dí.

Firdausí wrote the *Sháh-Náma*, containing one hundred and twenty thousand lines, at the desire of Mahmúd of Ghazní ; he died A.D. 1021.

The *Sháh-Náma* has, in part, been translated into English.

229 In the *'Ikd-i-manzúm*, couplets 229–234 are omitted.

230 Bind the enemy, by showing kindness ;  
For, one cannot sever this noose, with the sword.

When the enemy experiences liberality, and courtesy, and  
generosity,  
Villainy from him comes not, again, into existence.

Do not evil, lest thou experience evil from the good friend ;  
The good fruit comes not from the seed-stone of wicked-  
ness.

When with a friend, thou art difficult and hard to please,  
He desires not to see thy painting and colour (of face).

But, if a man desires good to his enemies,  
Much time passes not, but they become friendly.

---

235 A young man came before me, on the road,  
A sheep, running in bounds, behind him.

I said to him :—" This is a cord and ligature,  
" Which draws the sheep behind thee."

He quickly undid the collar and chain from it ;  
Left and right, it began to bound.

Yet, from behind him, gambolling, it proceeded ;  
For, it had eaten barley and green-corn from the man's  
hand.

When it returned to its place from pleasure and sport,  
He regarded me, and said :—" Oh man of sense !

240 " This cord draws it not to me ;  
" But kindness is the noose about its neck."



From the kindness, which the raging elephant has experienced,  
He attacks not the elephant-keeper.

Oh good man ! cherish the bad ;  
For, the dog keeps watch, when he devours thy bread.

The leopard's teeth are blunt against that man,  
On whose cheek, he rubs, for two days, his tongue.

---

A certain one saw a fox, legless and footless,  
He was astonished at the grace and creation of God,

245 Saying :—" How does he pass his life ?  
" With this leg and foot, how does he eat ? "

The darvesh of disturbed complexion was in this thought,  
When a lion came forth, a jackal in his claws.

The lion devoured the jackal of reversed fortune ;  
Whatever remained,—of it, the fox ate to satiety.

Again, the next day, the event happened,  
That the Victual-sender (God) gave to him the day's food.

Truth made the man's eye capable of vision ;  
He went ; and relied on the Creator,

250 Saying :—" I may, after this, sit, ant-like, in a corner ;  
" Since, elephants eat not their daily food by force."

He lowered, for some time, his chin to the collar (of reflection),

Saying :—" The Giver of daily food sends from the unseen."

---

241 Muslims regard a dog as being very unclean.

244 "Be dast wa be pá," signify—be tábí wa be tákatí.

Neither stranger nor friend suffered toil for him ;  
Harp-like, his veins, and bones, and skin remained.

When, from weakness, his patience and sense remained not,  
From the wall of the prayer-place, there came to his ear :—

“ Oh impostor ! go ; be the rending lion ;  
“ Cast not thyself, like the crippled fox.”

255 Strive so that, lion-like, there may remain (something)  
from thy (trade)  
Why art thou, fox-like, depending upon the lion's leavings.

Whose neck is stout, like lions,  
If he falls (into idleness) fox-like, a dog is better than he.

Bring to thy grasp ; and, drink with others ;  
Pay no attention to others' leavings.

Eat, so long as thou canst,—by means of thy own arm ;  
That thy strength may be in thy own balance.

Endure toil, like men ; and cause ease to arrive (to others) ;  
The impotent enjoys the gain of others' toil.

260 Oh young man ! Take the hand of the old darvesh ;  
Cast not thyself down, saying :—“ Take my hand ! ”

The gift of God is on that slave,  
By whose existence, the people are at ease.

That head, in which is a brain, exercises liberality ;  
For, those of mean spirit are skin,—brainless.

That one experiences good, in both habitations,  
Who causes good to reach the people of God.

258 On the Judgment Day thy endeavours will be estimated.  
263 In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 263 to 265 are omitted.

Didst thou not see (hear), on the foot-binding (difficult)  
road to Kesh,

What that camel-driver said to his own son ?

- 265 “ Enjoy food, with good men ;  
“ For, they will not eat in solitude.”

---

I have heard that there was a man of pure birth-place,  
A recogniser, and road-traveller (in the way of God), in the  
confines of Rúm.

I and some other travellers, desert-wandering,  
Went a-travelling for the sake of seeing the man.

He kissed the head, and eyes, and hands of each one ;  
Caused us to sit, with reverence and respect ; and sate  
down.

I beheld his gold, and sown fields, and attendants and  
goods ;  
But, without generosity, like a fruitless tree.

- 270 As to manner and grace, he was attentive ;  
But, his cooking-pot-place was very cold.

All night, there was neither rest, nor sleep,—for him,  
As to praising God and reciting—“ There is no God, but  
God” ; and, for us, from hunger.

In the morning, he bound his loins and opened the door ;  
Began the very same courtesy and hand-kissing.

---

264 “ Pá-band ” signifies—foot-binding. It may be by clay, by stones, or  
other impediment on the path.

271 “ Tasbīḥ ” signifies—subḥānu-llāh !

“ Taḥlīl ” signifies—lá iláha illa llāh !

There was one, who was of sweet and pleasant temper,  
Who, was, in that inn, a traveller with us.

He said :—" Give me the kiss, by letter-translating,  
" Because, for the darvesh, food (tosha) is better than  
a kiss (bosa).

275 " Place not the hand in service, on my shoes ;  
" Give me bread ; and, strike then on my head."

Men have, by gifts, excelled ;  
Not those night-alive-keeping, heart dead.

This indeed I experienced from the Tatár watchman,  
Heart dead, but night-alive-keeping.

Liberality is—generosity and bread-giving ;  
Foolish speech is the empty drum.

At the Resurrection, thou seest, in Paradise, that one,  
Who sought truth, and let go pretension.

280 By truth, one can make a proper claim ;  
Breath, without action, is a slothful resting-place.

I have heard that, in the time of Hátim, there was,  
Among his horses, one swift footed, like smoke.

A black steed of zephyr swiftness, thunder noise,  
That used to surpass the lightning :

---

274 " Tashíf " signifies—the altering of the dots of letters ; thus, *bosa*, " a kiss," (using " tashíf ") means *tosha*, " victuals."

277 The author signifies—by the watchman, a holy man ; by the Tatár watchman, one not holy.

280 " Ma'ní " signifies—good deeds and approved qualities.

281 Hátim, a celebrated liberal man, was the son of 'Abdu-lláh, the son of Sa'du-t-Tai Shamsu-d-dín, the son of *Khulfán*. See the book in Persian, " Hátim-Tai," which is easy to read

Used, in the gallop, to scatter hail over mountain and plain ;

Thou wouldst have said :—" Perhaps, an April-cloud has passed ? "

Such an one, torrent-moving, desert-travelling,  
That the wind, from the front, used to lag, like dust.

285 Of Hátim's qualities, in every land and clime,  
They mentioned a little to the Sultán of Rúm,

Saying :—" A man, there is not, like him in liberality ;  
" A horse, there is not, like his in moving and journeying.

" Such a desert-traveller, like a boat on the water,  
" That the crow flies not above his journeying ! "

The Sultán of Rúm spoke to his learned Vazír, thus,  
Saying :—" The claim without evidence is shame.

" Of Hátim, that steed of Arab descent, I  
" Will ask ; if he should exercise liberality, and give,

290 " I shall know that, in him is the pomp of greatness ;  
" But, if he refuses, (his pretension) is the noise of the  
empty drum ! "

An envoy, skilful in the world, to (the tribe of) Tai,  
He despatched ; and, ten men along with him.

The ground dead ; but, the cloud weeping over it,  
The zephyr again placed life in it.

At the halting (dwelling) place of Hátim, the envoy  
alighted ;  
(And) became tranquil, like the thirsty one, by the Zinda  
river.

---

293 " Zinda " is a stream near Isfahán ; its water is very sweet.

He (Hátim) spread a table, victual-covered; and, killed a horse;

Gave them sugar in his skirt; gold in his fist.

295 There, they passed the night; and, the next day,  
The man of information (the envoy) uttered what he knew.

The envoy kept talking; and, Hátim distracted, like one intoxicated,

Kept gnawing his hand with the teeth of regret,

Saying :—" Oh partner, learned, of good name !

" Why didst thou not utter before this thy message ?

" That wind-moving, fast, Duldul,—I

" Made roast-meat, last night, for your sake.

" For, through the dread of rain and torrents, I knew

" It was impossible to go into the pasture place of the herd  
(of cattle).

300 " For me, there was, in no other way, either turning or  
path ;

" There was only that horse at the door of my court.

" I considered it not generosity, in respect to my usage,

" That a guest should sleep, heart torn with hunger.

" For me,—a name conspicuous in the climes (of the world)  
is necessary ;

" Say :—let there not be (for me) another famous steed."

He gave to the individuals of the envoy's retinue dirams,  
dresses of honour, and horses.

—The good quality is natural, not an acquisition.—

295 The envoy asked for the horse, desired by the Sultán.

298 See Longfellow's poem, entitled " Sir Frederigo and his Falcon," one of the tales of the Wayside Inn.

News of the young man of Tai went to Rúm ;  
The Sultán uttered a thousand benedictions on his disposition.

305 Be not content with this incident of Hátim ;  
Listen to this more beautiful circumstance.

---

I know not, who told me this tale,  
That there had been, in the country of Yaman, an order-giver.

He snatched the ball of empire from those renowned ;  
For in treasure-bestowing, there was no equal to him.

One could call him—"the Cloud of Liberality,"  
For, his hand used to scatter money like rain.

No one used to take to him the name of (mention) Hátim,  
At which (mentioning), phrenzy used not to go to his head,

310 Saying :—"How much—of the words of that wind-weigher,  
"Who has neither country, nor command, nor treasure?"

I heard that he prepared a royal feast,  
(And) harp-like entertained the people, in the midst of the banquet.

One opened the door of mention of Hátim ;  
Another began to utter his praise.

They held the man to the desire of revenge ;  
They appointed one for his blood-devouring,

Saying :—"So long as Hátim is in my time,  
"My name will not go (into the world) for goodness."

315 The calamity-seeking one took the path to the tribe of Tai,  
He set out for the slaying of the young man.

There came before him, on the road, a young man,  
From whom, the perfume of affection came up to him :

Good of visage, and wise, and sweet of tongue ;  
He brought him a guest, that night, to his own abode :

Exercised liberality, and sympathised, and made excuses ;  
Snatched the enemy's heart, by kindness :

Placed the morning-kiss on his hands and feet,  
Saying :—" Stay at ease, a few days, with us."

320 He said :—" I cannot here become a resident ;  
" For I have before me an important matter."

He replied :—" If thou wilt reveal the matter to me,  
" I will with soul exert myself, like friends of one heart."

He replied :—" Oh young man ! listen to me ;  
" For, I know the generous one is a secret-concealer.

" Thou knowest, perhaps, in this land, Hátim,  
" Who is of happy judgment, and good manners ?

" The King of Yaman has desired his head ;  
" I know not, what hatred has arisen between them.

325 " Show me the short path to where he is ;  
" Oh friend ! this indeed, I look for from thy courtesy."

The youth laughed, saying :—" I am Hátim :  
" Behold ! separate, with the sword, the head from my  
body.

---

315 " *Pai giriftan* " here signifies—*kaşd namúdan*.



“ When the morning becomes white, it is not proper that,  
“ Injury should reach thee ; or, that thou shouldst become  
disappointed.”

When Hátim placed, with nobleness, his head (for  
slaughter),

A cry issued from the young man (the guest).

He fell upon the dust ; and, leaped to his feet ;  
Kissed now the dust ; now, his feet and hands :

330 Threw down the sword ; and placed the quiver (on the  
ground) ;

Put, like the helpless, his hands on his breast,

Saying :—“ If I strike a rose on thy body,  
“ I am, in men’s sight, a woman, not a man.”

He kissed both his eyes ; and, embraced him ;  
And, took his way, thence, to Yaman.

Between the two eyebrows of the man, the king  
Knew, immediately, that he had not performed the duty.

He said :—“ Come ; what news hast thou ?  
“ Why didst thou not bind his head to thy saddle-strap ?

335 “ Perhaps a renowned one made an assault against thee ;  
“ Thou, through weakness, sustainedst not the fury of  
the contest ? ”

The clever youth gave the ground-kiss ;  
Praised the king ; and, the majesty of his nature,

Saying :—“ I discovered Hátim, fame-seeking,  
“ Skilful, and of pleasant appearance, and of good visage :

---

327 My relatives may do thee an injury for slaying me ; therefore slay me  
at once, and get thee away.

330 “ Bar pá,e jastan ” here signifies—to leap on the feet, in joy.

“ Considered him generous, and endowed with wisdom ;  
 “ Regarded him, in manliness, my superior :

“ The load of his favour made my back bent ;  
 “ He slew me, with the sword of kindness and grace.”

340 Whatever he experienced, from his liberality,—he uttered ;  
 The monarch recited praises on the offspring of Tai :

Gave the envoy gold-money,  
 Saying :—“ Liberality is the seal on Hátim's name.”

It (the evidence) reaches (touches) him, if they give evi-  
 dence ;  
 Since, truth and fame are his fellow-travellers.

I have heard that, in the time of the Prophet, the tribe of  
 Tai  
 Made not acceptance of the faith (of the Kurán).

The Messenger of good news and the Observer (Muham-  
 mad) sent an army ;  
 They took captive a multitude of them.

345 The Prophet ordered them to slay them with the sword of  
hate,  
Saying :—“ They are unclean, and of impure religion.”

A woman said :—“ I am Hátim's daughter,  
 “ Ask (pardon for me) from this renowned Ruler (Mu-  
 hammad) :

“ Oh revered sir ! exercise generosity as to my state ;  
 “ For my lord (Hátim) was endowed with liberality.”

342 Report is not a liar ; his liberality is a settled matter.  
 343 In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 343 to 367 are omitted.

By the command of the Prophet of pure judgment,  
They loosed the fetters from her hands and feet :

Drew the sword upon the rest of that tribe,  
So that they caused, mercilessly, a torrent of blood to flow.

350 With weeping, the woman said to the swordsman :—  
“ Strike my neck also with all the rest :

“ I consider, not release from fetters, generosity ;  
“ I—alone ; and, my friends in the noose (of calamity).”

She kept uttering lamentations, over the brothers of Tai ;  
Her voice came to the Prophet's ear.

The rest of that tribe, he gave to her,  
Saying :—“ One of true origin never erred ! ”

---

From Hátim's store-house, an old man  
Demanded ten diram's weight of sugar candy.

355 From the historian, I remember news such,  
That he sent him a sack of sugar.

The wife said, from the tent :—“ What is this ?  
“ The old man's need was exactly ten dirams.”

The man-cherisher of Tai heard this speech ;  
He laughed, and said :—“ Oh heart's ease of Hai !

“ If he demanded (what was) suitable to his own need,  
(and got it),  
“ Where is the liberality of the offspring of Hátim ? ”

---

354 “ Fáníz,” in Arabic ; “ páníz,” in Persian, signifies—a confection like shakar-barg ; shakar-kalam.

Another in generosity, like Hátim,  
Comes not, perhaps, from the world's revolution,

360 That Abú Bakr, son of Sa'd,—the hand of munificence,  
Whose magnanimity places on the mouths of beggars.

Oh peasant-refuge ! May thy heart be glad !  
May Islám, by thy endeavour, flourish !

This dust of happy soil raises its head (ascends),  
By thy justice over the climes of Greece and Rúm !

Like Hátim, if his name had not been,  
No one, in the world, would have taken the name of (men-  
tioned) Tai.

In books, the praise of that renowned one (Hátim) remains;  
For thee, both praise and also reward remain.

365 Whereas, Hátim sought for that reputation and renown (in  
the world) ;  
Thy struggle and endeavour are for the sake of God !

There is no ceremony for the darvesh ;  
Save this one word,—there is no other counsel :—

“ As much as may be in thy power, do good ; ”  
Good remains, after thee (Oh Abú Bakr ! ) ; and, speech  
after Sa'dí.

---

Of a certain one, an ass had fallen into the mire ;  
The blood, through phrenzy, had gathered to his heart.

---

360 Abú Bakr, without being asked, gave to beggars ; and, thus closed their  
mouths.

Read :—Whose magnanimity places the hand of munificence on the  
mouths, &c.

Desert and rain, and cold, and torrent ;—  
Darkness let down its skirt on the horizon.

370 He was in this grief, all night, till the morning ;  
Spoke passionately ; and gave curse and abuse.

Neither enemy, nor friend, escaped his tongue (of reproach) ;  
Nor the Sultán, whose land and produce it was.

By chance, the lord of that wide plain  
Passed by him in that reprehensible state.

He heard these words,—far from rectitude ;—  
Neither patience of hearing ; nor, way of answer.

He looked at him, with the eye of punishment,  
Saying :—“ For what is this person’s anger against me ? ”

375 He said :—“ Oh king ! strike him with the sword ;  
“ Pluck up his life’s root, from the earth’s surface.”

The Sultán of high rank glanced ;  
He himself saw him, in calamity ; and, his ass in the mire :

Forgave the man, on account of his ruined state :  
Swallowed the anger of his cold words :

Gave him gold, and a horse, and a coat of fur ;  
—How good is love, at the time of hate !—

One said to him :—“ Oh old man, void of reason and sense !  
“ Thou didst escape wonderfully from slaughter.” He  
said :—“ Be silent :

380 “ If I complained on account of my own grief,  
“ He gave me presents suitable to himself.”

For evil, the return of evil is easy ;  
If thou art a man, do good to him who did evil to thee.

---

I have heard that a proud man, from pride-intoxication,  
Shut the door of his house in a beggar's face.

The man, helpless, sate down in a corner ;  
His liver hot (with rage) ; and, sigh cold, from the heat (of  
despair) of his chest.

A certain one, covered as to the eyes (blind), entered ;  
He asked him, the cause of his hate and rage.

385 He related—and wept, on the dust of the street—  
The violence, that chanced to him, from that person.

He said :—“ Oh certain one ! abandon grief, —  
“ Break fast, only to-night, with me.”

He drew his collar, with politeness and kindness ;  
Brought him to his lodging ; and, spread the victual-table.

The darwesh of luminous disposition became comforted ;  
He said :—“ May God give thee luminosity (as to thy  
eyes) ! ”

At night, from his eyes some drops trickled ;  
In the morning, he opened his eyes ; and, beheld the world !

390 Within the city, the story went ; and tumult occurred—  
For, last night, an eyeless one opened his eye.

He heard this report,—the rich man of stone heart,  
From whom, the darwesh turned away straitened in heart.

He said :—“ Oh fortunate one ! relate this tale,  
“ How this difficult deed became easy to thee.

“ Who turned back to thee this candle, world-illumi-  
nating ? ”

He replied :—“ Oh tyrant of troubled days !

---

387 With kindness and compassion, having seized his collar, and placed  
his hand on his neck, he drew him to his own house.

“Thou wast of short vision, and of sluggish judgment,  
 “For, instead of the *humá* (an auspicious bird), thou wast  
 engaged with the owl (a filthy bird).

395 “That one opened this door (of vision) on my face;  
 “On whose face, thou didst shut the door.

“If thou dost express a kiss on the dust of men,  
 “In the name of manliness! luminosity comes to thee.

“Those, who are covered as to the eye of the heart,  
 “Are, indeed, careless of this antimony.”

When the one of overturned fortune heard this rebuke,  
 He bit the finger-tip of regret, with his teeth,

Saying:—“My falcon became the prey of thy net;  
 “I had fortune; to thy name, it went.”

400 How may he bring the male falcon to his grasp,—that one,  
 Like a mouse, teeth plunged in avarice.

Verily, if thou art a seeker of the pious one,  
 Exercise not carelessness, a moment, as to his service.

Give food to the sparrow, and partridge and dove,  
 That the *humá* may, one day, fall to thy net.

When thou castst the arrow of supplication, in every corner,  
 There is hope that thou mayst, suddenly, make a prey.

From many oysters, a single pearl comes forth;  
 Out of a hundred arrows, one comes to the butt.

396 The first line means:—If thou dost ask for aid from man.

400 The falcon here signifies—*mardum-i-ma'ní wa kámil*; *ṣáhib-i-dil*, a pious one.

“Dandán faro burdan” signifies—*khám ṭam' namúdan*.

405 The son of a certain one was lost from a camel-litter;  
 The father wandered about, in the night-time, in the  
 káfila :

Inquired at every tent; and, hastened in every direction;  
 Found that light (his son), in the darkness.

When he came to the men of the káraván,  
 I heard, that he said to the camel-driver :—

“ Knowst thou not how I found the path to the friend (my  
 son) ?

“ Whosoever came before me, I said :—it is he ! ”

The pious ones are at the heels of every one, on that  
 account,

That they may, perchance, one day, reach a sage, holy man :

410 Bear burdens, for the sake of the pious ;  
 Endure the thorn (of affliction) for the sake of a single rose.

---

From the crown of one king-born, in a camel-stable,  
 A ruby fell, one night, in a stony place.

The father, to his son, said :—“ In this night, of dark  
 colour,

“ How knowst thou,—which is the jewel or stone ?

“ Oh son ! take care of all the stones,

“ That the ruby may not be out of their midst.”

The pure ones of distraught visage, among the rogues,  
 Are, indeed—the ruby and (precious) stone, in a dark place.

---

408 Whoever seeks runs ; whoever runs finds.

411 In the 'Ikd-i-manzúm, couplets 411 to 426 are omitted.



415 Endure, with pleasure the burden (of violence) of every  
 ignorant one,  
 That, in the end of time, a pious one may fall (to thee).

The person, who is merry of head (enamoured) with a  
 friend,—  
 Seest thou not how he is the enemy's (rival's) load-carrier?

He rends not his garment, rose-like, on account of the  
 power of the thorn,  
 Who, pomegranate-like, laughs, blood gathered in the heart.

Endure the grief of a crowd, for the love of one,  
 Pay observance to a hundred, for the sake of one.

If those of foot-dust, distraught of head,  
 Are, in thy sight, contemptible and miserable,

420 Ever look not at them, with the eye of approval;  
 For, they are approved of God, and that is enough.

The one, who, in thy opinion, is bad,  
 How knowst thou but that he himself is the possessor of  
 saintship?

The door of the knowledge of God is open to those,  
 In whose face, the doors of men are shut.

416 For the good, he endures the violence of the bad.

417 "Khún dar dil uftádan" signifies—ghuṣṣa dar dil dáshtan, wa dar  
 'ishk-i-mahbúbe giriftár búdan. When the pomegranate is red and  
 ripe, it rends its skin. The rending of the skin they call laughing or  
 being of happy state. Notwithstanding that, through grief, blood had  
 fallen (gathered) to his heart, he was content.

In some copies, the second line runs:—

(c.) Which thorn (rival) may have, snake-like, fallen in thy path.

(h) In whose heart, blood, pomegranate-like, may have gathered.

420 If the fallen and abject, who are of pure breath, but outwardly di-  
 shevelled and wretched, appear to thee contemptible, look not at them;  
 for, being approved of God, they have no need of thy approbation.

Many of better life, and bitterness-tasting,  
 May be, in the quarter (Judgment Day), skirt-displaying (in  
 majesty).

If thou hast reason and deliberation, thou wilt kiss  
 The hand of the king-born one (the Man of God) in the  
 prison (of this world).

425 For, the day he comes from prison,  
 He may, when he becomes lofty, give to thee loftiness.

Cause not the rose-tree to burn, in the autumn ;  
 For, it appears to thee excellent, in the fresh spring.

---

A certain one possessed not the power of spending ;  
 Gold, he had ; the power of enjoying, he had not.

He used not to eat, that his heart might rest ;  
 Used not to give (in alms), that it might be of use to him  
 to-morrow (Judgment Day).

Night and day,—in the entanglement of gold and silver :  
 —The fetter of the mean one, (is) in gold and silver.—

430 One day, the son, in ambush, knew  
 Where the miser had placed the gold, in the earth.

He brought it forth from the dust, and gave it to the wind ;  
 I heard, that he deposited a stone in that spot.

For the young man, the gold remained not ;  
 It came to one hand ; he enjoyed it with the other.

---

423 "Talkh 'aishán" signifies—persons to whom life, from exceeding  
 hardship and poverty, is bitter.

"Dáman-kashán" signifies—kharámán ba náz vavanda.

426 In the autumn of this world, the holy man appears bad ; but, in the  
 fresh spring of the next world, the marks of his goodness will appear.

For this reason that he was one of unclean face (conduct)  
and a low thrower of dice ;

His hat in the bázár ; and, trousers pawned,

The father,—clutch placed (in grief) on his own neck ;  
The son,—a harp and flute (in enjoyment) brought to the  
front.

435 The father, weeping and lamenting, slept not all night ;  
The son, in the morning, laughed ; and said :—

“ Oh father ! gold is for the sake of enjoying ;  
“ For depositing, whether stone or gold,—what matter ? ”

They bring forth gold from the hard stone ;  
That they may enjoy it with friends and beloved ones.

Gold, in the palm of the man's hand, world-worshipping,  
Oh brother ! is yet within the stone.

When, thou art, in life, bad to thy family,  
Complain not of them, if they wish thy death.

440 Thy family enjoy thy (wealth) to satiety, at that time,  
When thou fallst from the roof of fifty yards to the bottom.

The miser, rich with dínars and silver,  
Is a tilism dwelling over the treasure.

His gold remained years, for the reason,  
That such a tilism trembles at its head !

With the stone of Fate (death), they suddenly shatter it ;  
They make, at ease, division of the treasure.

---

441 “ Tilism ” signifies—a creature which guards gold. It neither enjoys  
the gold, nor permits anyone else to enjoy it. From this word, comes  
*talisman*.

After carrying and collecting, like the ant,  
Enjoy,—before that the grave-worm devours thee.

445 The words of Sa'dí are precept and counsel ;  
If thou becomest work-performing, they are of use to thee.

It is folly to turn away the face from this ;  
Since one can, in this way, obtain empire.

---

A young man had exercised liberality to the extent of a  
dáng ;  
He had accomplished an old man's desire.

The sky suddenly caught him, in a crime ;  
The Sultán sent him to the slaughtering-place :

The hurrying of soldiers, and uproar of the people ;  
Sightseers about the door, and street, and roof.

450 When, within the tumult, the old darvesh beheld  
The young man, a captive in the people's hands.

His heart was wounded, on account of the wretched youth,  
Who had, once, taken his heart.

He raised a cry, saying :—" The Sultán is dead !  
" The world remained ; but, he took away his good disposition."

He kept rubbing together the hands of sorrow ;  
The soldiers, swords drawn (for slaying) heard.

At the cry, a shout issued from them,—  
Palm-striking on head, and face, and shoulder !

---

453 " Turk " signifies—a man of Turkistan, the people of which were  
notorious for blood-shedding and fearlessness.

455 On foot, up to the door of the court, with haste,  
They ran ; they saw the king on the throne.

The youth went forth from the midst ; they took the old  
man,  
By the neck, a captive, to the Sultán's throne.

He, with awe-inspiring manner inquired ; and, displayed  
majesty,  
Saying :—" To thee,—wherefore was the desiring of my  
death ?

" Since my disposition and rectitude are good,  
" Why, in the end, desirest thou ill (by my death) to  
men ? "

The resolute old man brought forth a tongue,  
Saying :—" Oh (king) ! the world is a ring in the ear (a  
slave) of thy order !

460 " By a false word—' the king is dead ! '  
" Thou didst not die ; and, a helpless one carried off his  
life."

The king wondered at this tale to such a degree,  
That he gave him something, and said nothing.

And, on this side, the youth, falling and rising,  
Kept proceeding, running in every direction, helplessly.

One said to him :—" From the four directions of retribution,  
" What didst thou, that liberation came to thy soul ? "

---

458 See couplet 452.

463 " Char-sú " signifies—the "square" in which punishments are inflicted and orders issued.

He whispered to his ear—"Oh wise man !  
 " I escaped from bonds, through a brave soul and a dāng."

465 He places a seed in the dust for the reason,  
 That it may, in the day of distress, give fruit.

A barley-grain keeps back a great calamity ;  
 Thou hast heard of the staff, that killed 'Uj (King of  
 Bashan) ?

The true account came from the Chosen One (Muhammad),  
 That—the giving of arms is the repelling of calamity.

Thou seest not an enemy's foot, in this habitation ;  
 For, Abú Bakr, son of Sa'd, is master of the kingdom.

A world joyful by thy face,—Oh (Abú Bakr) ! seize  
 The world, that joy may be on thy face.

470 In thy time, no one endures distress from another ;  
 The rose in the parterre suffers not the violence of the  
 thorn.

Thou art the shadow of the grace of God on the earth ;  
 Prophet-like—the mercy of both worlds !

466 The mother of 'Uj, who lived to the age of three thousand five hundred years, was a daughter of 'Adam (on him be peace ! ) ; his father was 'Anak. At the time of Noah's deluge, notwithstanding that the water stood forty yards above the highest mountains of the earth, it reached only to his waist.

Moses made an attempt against him, upon which 'Uj took up a mountain, two farsangs in extent, on his head, with the intention of casting it on the army of Moses, so that it might be destroyed. God sent the bird, Hoopoo, which pierced the mountain, so that it became a collar about his neck.

Moses then struck him on the ankle, so that he fell and died.

467 In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 467 to 472 are omitted.

469 The world having become glad some through Abú Bakr, the author invites Abú Bakr to be joyous through the world,

If a person knows not thy worth,—what matter ?  
They also know not the—"Shab-i-kadr."

---

In a dream, a person beheld the plain of the place of  
assembling :

The earth's surface, from sun,—molten copper.

From men, complaint kept ascending to heaven ;  
The brain, through heat, came to boiling.

475 (Beheld) a certain one of this multitude,—in the shade ;  
An ornament of Paradise, about his neck.

He inquired, saying :—" Oh man, assembly-adorning !  
" Who was thy helper, in this assembly ? "

He said :—" I had a vine at my house-door ;  
" A holy man slept in its shade.

" At this time of despair, that true man  
" Asked pardon for my sins from the Ruler of rulers,

" Saying :—" Oh Lord ! forgive this slave ;  
" " For once I experienced, through him, ease. ' "

480 What said I, when I unloosed this mystery (of the title) ?  
—" May glad tidings be to the Lord of Shíráz (Abú-  
Bakr) ! "

For, the grandees, in the shadow of his spirit,  
Are resident ; and, at the table of his bounty.

---

472 The "Shab-i-kadr" is the most blessed of nights, on which prayers  
are accepted ; it is the 27th of the month Ramazán.

480 The author's reply is given in the second line.

In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 480 to 484 are omitted.

The king,—in whose shade a world is living and at ease at his table  
of bounty,—to what dignity will he (in heaven) ascend !

The man of liberality is a tree, fruit-possessing;  
When thou passest beyond it,—fuel of the mountain.

If they strike the axe, at the foot of the tree, fit for fuel,—  
When strike they at the fruitful tree? }

Oh tree of skill (Abú-Bakr)! Long keep thy foot!  
For, thou art fruit-possessing; and, also shady.

485 As to beneficence, I said much;  
But, it is not proper for every one.

{ Enjoy the blood and wealth of the one, man-injuring;  
For, of the bad bird,—the feather and wing plucked out is  
best. }

One, who is in strife with thy master,  
Why givest thou to his hand, the stick and stone?

Cast away the root, that bears the thorn;  
Cherish the tree, that produces fruit.

Give the dignity of the great, to that one,  
Who to inferiors holds himself, not proudly.

490 Wherever, there is a tyrant,—pardon him not;  
For, mercy to him is tyranny to the world.

The lamp of the world-consumer (tyrant) extinguished—is  
best;

One in the fire is better than a people with the stain (of  
tyranny).

Whosoever shows mercy to a thief,  
Attacks the káraván, with his own arm.

482 "Guzáshtan" signifies—"to abandon" as well as "to pass."

489 "Sar girán dáshtan bar kase" signifies—ghulzát wa šakl namúdan  
ba kase.



Give to the wind (of destruction) the heads of those  
tyranny-practising :

Oppression, on one oppression-practising, is justice and  
equity.

I have heard that a man experienced house-vexation ;  
For, a wasp made a nest in his roof.

495 His wife said :—" What thou desirest in respect to them,  
do not ;

" Lest that they should become scattered from their native  
country."

The wise man went to his own work ;  
The wasps began, one day, to sting his wife.

About the door, and roof, and street,—the foolish wife  
Kept making lamentation. But, the husband said :—

" Oh woman ! make not thy face bitter towards men ;  
" Thou didst say :—" Slay not the poor wasps ! " "

How may one do good to the bad !  
Forbearance to ill-doers increases ill.

500 When thou beholdst a people's injury in a chief,  
Cut his throat, with a sharp sword.

What dog, in short, is there—for whom they place a victual-  
tray ?

Order, that they give him a bone.

[How well has the old man of the village (Firdausi) ex-  
pressed this proverb :—

" The baggage-animal, leg-striking (kicking), is best under  
a heavy load."

If the watchman shows mercy,  
No one is able to sleep at night, for thieves.

In the circle of contest, the spear-reed  
Is more precious than a hundred thousand sugar-reeds  
(canes).

505 Not every one is worthy of property ;  
This one requires property ; that one, rebuke.

When thou cherishst the cat, it takes away the pigeon ;  
When thou makest the wolf fat, it rends Joseph.

The edifice, that has not firm foundations,—  
Make it not lofty ; and, if thou dost, tremble for it.

How well said Bahrám, desert-dwelling,  
When his thorough-bred, restive, steed threw him to the  
earth,

“ It is proper to take from the herd another horse,  
“ Which it is possible to restrain, if he becomes restive.”

510 Oh son ! bind the Euphrates, at low-water ;  
For, when the torrent is risen, it is of no use.

When the filthy wolf comes to thy snare,  
Slay ; if not, pluck up thy heart from (love for) the sheep.

From Iblís, adoration never comes ;  
Nor from the bad jewel,—goodness into existence.

Give neither place nor opportunity to the malignant one ;  
The enemy in the pit, and the demon in the glass bottle—  
is best.

506 The brothers cast Joseph into a pit, sold him, and represented to their  
father that a wolf had devoured him.

508 Bahrám was called Bahrám Gor, “Sahra-nishín,” because he loved  
the hunting of asses in the desert.

In the 'Ik̄d-i-manzúm, couplets 508 to 518 are omitted.

Say not :—" It is proper, to kill this snake with a stick " ;  
Strike, when he has his head beneath thy stone.

<sup>515</sup> The pen striker (pen-man), who did ill to his inferiors,  
To make, with the sword, his hand a pen (to sever it)—is  
best.

The deliberator, who introduces bad regulations,  
Takes thee, that he may give thee to hell-fire.

Say not :—" For the country, this deliberator is enough " ;  
Call him not deliberator, who is unfortunate.

The fortunate one acts upon Sa'di's speech,  
Because, it is the (cause of) increase of country, and deli-  
beration, and judgment.

## CHAPTER III.

## ON LOVE.

<sup>1</sup> OH happy the time of those distraught in love of Him,  
Whether they experience the wound (of separation); or,  
the plaster (of propinquity to Him)!

Beggars from royalty fleeing;  
In the hope of union with Him, in beggary, long-suffering.

<sup>1</sup> This chapter is on Šúfí-ism (*taṣawwuf*), or mysticism; the language used is mystical (*mutaṣawwif*). The one who practises Šúfí-ism is called—Šúfí; ahl-i-ḥál; 'áshik-i-sádik; ahl-i-ṭaríkat; ahl-i-dil; šáhib-dil; sálik; šáhib-i-ma'rifat; 'árif.

The student should on this subject see—

(a) A summary of the tenets of Šúfí-ism, by Sir William Jones.

(b) De Bode's *Bakhára*.

(c) Sind, by Richard Burton, *World-traveller*, chap. viii.

(d) Hughes' *Notes on Muḥammadanism*, p. 227.

For a general view of the tenets of the Muslim religion, see Lane's *Modern Egyptians*, vol. i. chap. iii.

The season of those distraught in love for God Most High is, in every state, very happy. Whether they experience the wound of separation, through the thorn of pain of love for Him, or become wounded by the axe of separation, life-penetrating, and the arrow of affliction of separation, heart-stitching; or, by obtaining propinquity to the presence of God, and the fortune of union with Him, receive the healing plaster for the heart-wound, and drink the draught, pleasant-tasting, of beholding Him.

<sup>2</sup> In "pádsháhí" the word "pád" signifies—pás; "sháh" signifies—*khudáwind*.

Time to time, they drink the wine of pain (of love for Him);  
And, if they consider it bitter, they draw breath (are  
patient).

In the pleasure of wine, there is the evil of head-sickness;  
The thorn is the armour-bearer of the rose-branch.

- 5 Patience, which is in remembrance of Him, is not bitter;  
For bitterness from a friend's hand is sugar.

His captive desires not release from bonds;  
His prey seeks not freedom from the snare.

Sultáns of retirement, beggars of Hai!  
Stages of God recognisers, foot-trace lost.

Intoxicated with (the love of) the friend (God), reproach-  
enduring;  
The camel, intoxicated, more easily bears the load.

How, may people find the path to their state?  
For, like the water of life, they are in darkness.

- 4 For the wine-drinkers of the carpet of love, head-sickness of pain and affliction is inevitable; and, for rose-pluckers of the gardens of the knowledge of God,—the skirt, full of thorns.

Then, head-sickness from wine-drinking and the thorn of the rose-branch are as guards, so that the father of lust may not, without bitterness, obtain the taste of pleasure, nor easily bring to his hand the rose (of the beloved).

- 7 The true lovers of God apparently wander about villages, and appear, in the sight of superficial observers, beggars, foodless and wretched. But, in retirement, they are kings of the time, and road-recognisers, that is, they have reached the stage and are as those trace-lost, so that no one finds information regarding their track, or becomes acquainted with the work which they do.

"Uzlat" here signifies—*khilwat wa tanhá,í*, or the mystery belonging to God, into which a stranger has no entrance.

"Gum karda pai" signifies—*be nishán búdan*, one who so does his work that another cannot find the clue to his purpose.

"Manázil-shinásán" signifies—*murshidán wa 'árifán*, holy men.

- 9 In the first line, "sar" is redundant.

"Wakt" here signifies—*wakt-i-huzúr*, the time of being present before God.

- 10 Like the holy house (Jerusalem), within—full of towers  
(pomp);  
Without,—the wall left desolate.

Moth-like, they set fire to themselves;  
Silk-worm-like, they spin not on themselves (a protection).

Mistress in embrace,—mistress-seeking;  
On the stream-bank, lip dry with thirst.

I say not that, as to water, they are powerless;  
But they are, on the Nile, dropsical.

---

The love of one, like thyself—of water and clay,  
Ravishes patience and heart-ease.

- 15 In wakefulness,—enamoured of her cheek and mole;  
In sleep,—foot-bound, in thought of her.

In truth, thou placest thy head (life) at her feet, in such a  
way,  
That, thou considerst the world, in comparison with her  
existence, non-existent.

When thy gold comes not to the eye (of approval) of thy  
mistress,  
Gold and dust appear to thee the same.

---

As regards the water of life, see the Sikandar Nāma, Discourses 69  
and 70. English translation by Clarke.

- 10 Their interior is prosperous; exterior, wretched.

- 12 Their love of God is insatiable. A dropsical patient is never wearied  
of drinking water.

- 14 There are two kinds of love, one *superficial*—the love of man for man;  
the other, *real*—the love of the creature for the Creator.

To thee,—desire for another appears not ;  
 For, with her,—place for another remains not.

Thou sayst :—“ Her lodging is within my eye ” ;  
 And, if thou closest together the eye—“ It is in my heart.”

20 Neither, thought of any one, lest thou shouldst become  
 disgraced,  
 Nor, power that thou shouldst, for a moment, become  
 patient.

If she desires thy life, thou placest it on the palm of her  
 hand ;  
 And, if she puts the sharp sword on thy head, thou placest  
 thy head (in submission).

When love, whose foundation is on desire,  
 Is, to such a degree, tumult-exciting and command-issuing,

Hast thou wonder at the travellers of the path of God,  
 That they should be immersed in the sea of truth ?

In passion for the Beloved, with soul engaged ;  
 In remembrance of the Friend (God), careless of the world.

25 In memory of God, they have fled from the world ;  
 So intoxicated with (the splendour of) the Cup-bearer  
 (God) that they have spilled the wine !

24 “ Mushtaghil,” in the first line, signifies—fáirigh ; mashghúl shavanda ;  
 anā kár kunanda.

“ Mushtaghil,” in the second line, signifies—gháfil ; ná-parwá ; rúe  
 gardánída.

“ Janán” signifies—ma’shúk, a mistress.

25 In Súff-ism, “sákí” signifies—murshid-i-kámil, a holy spiritual guide ;  
 and hence God, who, cup-bearer-like, gives the wine of love to His  
 lovers, and makes them non-existent in His beauty.

The second line means—With the splendour of the Cup-bearer (God)  
 they are to such a degree intoxicated, and become non-existent, that  
 they have spilled the wine of love, and have no need of wine for causing  
 intoxication (masti), and selflessness (be-khudí).

It is impossible to effect their cure with medicine ;  
For, none is acquainted with their pain (of love).

From eternity without beginning, to their ear comes :—

“ Am I not your God ? ”

With clamour, in a shout, they utter :—“ Yes ! ”

A crowd,—office-holding, corner-sitting ;  
Feet, clayey ; breath fiery,—

Pluck up, with a shout, a mountain from its place ;  
Heap together, with a cry, a city :

- 30 Are, wind-like, invisible, and swift-moving ;  
Are, stone-like, silent, but praise-uttering.

In the morning, they weep to such a degree that the water  
Washes down from their eyes the collyrium of sleep.

Steed (of the body) slain, with the great (austerity), with  
which they have urged the night ;  
In the morning, shouting, saying :—“ They are wearied ! ”

- 27 Before the creation of Adam, God Most High made all the souls,  
and said, “ Am I not your God ? ”

They gave evidence to the truth, and said, “ Yes ! ”

When they came into the world, many, by reason of worldly affections,  
forgot that covenant ; but, as to the true lovers, the sound of those  
words is yet in the ear of their hearts ; and they are in shout till now,  
in exclaiming, “ Yes ! ”

- 28 This crowd of men possessed of majesty, though they are apparently  
dismissed from office and are sitting in retirement, are, by reason of the  
heart, possessed of office. Outwardly, they appear contemptible ; yet,  
from the effects of the fire of love, they bring forth hot sighs, sparks-  
raining.

- 32 “ Shab rándan ” signifies—shab ravání kardan ; shab bedár búdan.  
They have slain lust ; exercised night-watching ; opened the door of the  
knowledge of God to their own faces ; and with these qualities, are in  
shout, saying :— \* \* \* \*

After passing through the stage “ ilā Allāh ” (to God), they proceed  
to “ fī Allāh ” (in God), to which there is no limit.



Night and day, in the sea of phrenzy and burning;  
From perturbation, they know not night from day.

So enamoured of the splendour of the figure-painter (God),  
That they have no occupation with the beauty of the out-  
ward form.]

35 The pious ones gave not their hearts to the covering (ex-  
ternal beauty);  
And, if a fool gave,—he is brainless, and fleshless.

That one drank the pure wine of the Unity (of God),  
Who forgot this world and the next.

I have heard that, once upon a time, one, beggar-born,  
Had affection for one, king-born.

He went, and cherished a vain desire;  
Imagination plunged its teeth in desire.

Mile-stone like, he used not to be free (absent) from his (the  
prince's) plain;  
Bishop-like, at all times, at the side of his horse.

40 His heart became blood, and the secret remained in his  
heart;  
But, his feet, through weeping, remained in the mire (of  
desire).

The guards obtained intelligence of his grief;  
They said to him:—"Wander not again here!"

37 In the 'Ikd-i-manẓúm, couplets 37-66 are omitted.

"Naẓar dáshtan" signifies—'ishk dáshtan.

"Dandán ba kám faro burdan" signifies—kám-yáb wa mastaulí  
shadan.

39 At chess, the Bishop is next the Knight (horse).

A moment, he went; recollection of the friend's face  
came to him;

Again, he pitched his tent, at the head of his friend's  
street.

A slave broke his head, and hand, and foot,  
Saying:—"Said we not once to thee,—come not here?"

Again, to him,—patience and rest remained not;  
On account of his friend's face, patience remained not.

45 Like flies from off the sugar, with violence, him,  
They used to drive away; but, with speed, he used to  
return.

One said to him:—"Oh impudent one of insane appear-  
ance!

"Thou hast wonderful patience as to (blows of) stick and  
stone."

He said:—"This violence, against me, is through his  
tyranny;

"It is not proper to complain of a friend's hand.

"Behold, I express the breath of friendship;

"If he holds me friend; or, if enemy.

"Expect not, without him, patience from me;

"Nay—even with him, repose has no possibility.

50 "Neither the power of patience, nor room for anger;

"Neither the possibility of being (stopping), nor the foot  
of flight.

"Say not,—turn aside the head from this door of the  
Court;

"Though he place my head, like a tent-peg in the tent-  
rope."

"Nay,—the moth, life given at its friend's foot,

"Is better than alive in its dark corner."

He said :—" If thou shouldst suffer the wound of his club?"

He replied :—" I will fall, at his feet, ball-like."

He said :—" If, with the sword, he cuts off thy head?"

He replied :—" This much even, I grudge not.

55 " To me,—indeed, there is not so much knowledge,—

" Whether, the crown, or the axe, be at my head.

" Display not reproof with me impatient ;

" For, patience appears not, in love.

" If my eye becomes white (diseased) like Yakúb,

" I abandon not hope of seeing Yusúf.

" One who is happy (in love) with another,

" Is not vexed with him, for every little thing."

On day, the youth kissed his (the prince's) stirrup ;

He became angry ; and turned the rein from him.

60 He laughed, and said :—" Turn not the rein ;

" For, the Sultán turns not away the rein (face) from any.

" To me—by thy existence, existence remains not ;

" To me,—in memory of thee, self-worshipping remains not.

" If thou observst a crime, reproach me not :

" Thou art head brought forth (produced) from my collar (of existence).

57 Yakúb, from much weeping for Yusúf, became blind ; he still kept the hope of seeing him. The meeting eventually took place.

58 See couplet 168.

62 Whenever the degree of love reaches the perfection of exaltation, there is in the lover's heart no room for another. To such a degree does this occur, that the lover forgets his own existence, and considers himself indeed the beloved one. Thus Majnúm, in fancy of Lailá, regarded his own body as Lailá, and said, "I am Lailá!" The beggar, even so, regarded his own body to be that of his beloved, and recognised not himself.

" I fixed my hand in thy stirrup with that boldness ;

" For, I brought not myself in the account.

" I drew the pen on (effaced) my own name ;

" Placed my foot on the head of my own desire.

65 " The arrow of that intoxicated eye slays me indeed ;

" What need that thou shouldst bring thy hand to the sword.

" Set fire to the reed, and pass ;

" So that in the forest neither dry, nor green, thing may remain."

I have heard, that at the chanting of a singer,

One of Parí face began to dance.

From the fire of the distracted hearts around her,

A candle-flame caught in her skirt.

She became troubled in heart and vexed ;

One of her lovers said :—" What fear ?

70 " "Oh love ! as to thee,—the fire burned the skirt ; -

" As to me,—it burned, all at once, the harvest (of existence)."

If thou art a lover, express not a breath about thy self ;

For, it is infidelity (to speak of) lover and one's self.

I recollect hearing from a knowing old man, in this way,

That one, distraught with love, turned his head to the desert.

66 The work which is accomplished with ease, make not difficult ; and useless labour endure not.

Again :— Cast the fire of love into my heart and go, so that all my body may burn.

71 Notwithstanding the existence of thy beloved, to consider thy own existence is disloyalty and infidelity.

The father, through separation from him, neither ate nor slept ;

They reproached the son ; he said :—

“ From that time, when the Friend called me one of his own,

“ Further love for any one remained not to me.

75 “ By God ! when He showed me His beauty,  
“ Whatever else I beheld appeared to me fancy.”

He, who turned away from the people became not lost ;  
For he found again his own lost one (God).

There are, beneath the sky, shunners of men,  
Whom one can call, at once, wild beast and also angel.

Like the angel, they rest not from remembering the King  
(God) ;  
Like the wild beast, they, night and day, shun men.

Strong of arm (by spirituality) ; but short of hand (by  
materiality) ;  
Wise,—(outwardly) mad ; sensible—(outwardly) intoxi-  
cated.

so Sometimes, tranquil in a corner, religious habit-stitching ;  
Sometimes, perplexed in society, religious habit-burning.

Neither passion as to themselves ; nor, solicitude for any  
one ;

Nor place for any one, in the cell of their unitarianism.

Perturbed of reason, confused of sense ;  
Ear-stuffed to the word of the adviser.

79 “ Strong, by spirituality ; weak, by materiality ; wise as to the next world ; mad as to this world ; sensible, not having drunk of the cup of lust ; intoxicated, with the cup of truth.

82 The adviser is one, who tries to lead them to the world.

The duck will not become drowned in the river (of lust);  
Thē samundar! what knows he of the torment of burning?

Empty of hand, men of full stomach (proud);  
Desert wanderers, without a Káfila:

- 85 They have no expectation of the people's approbation;  
For, they are approved of God;—and that is enough.

Dear ones (of God) concealed from the people's eye;  
Not those waist-cord-possessing, clothed in the habit of the  
darwesh.

They are full of fruit, and shady, vine-like;  
Are not like us,—of black deeds, and blue garment-dyers.

Head plunged in themselves (in reflection), oyster-like;  
Not, foam (on mouth) gathered, river-like.

If wisdom be thy friend, be afraid of them, (those foam-  
gathered);  
For, they are demons in the garb of men.

- 90 They are not men indeed of bone and skin;  
A true soul is not in every form.

The Sultán (God) is not the purchaser of every slave;  
Not, beneath every religious garment is there a living man.

If every drop of hail had become a pearl,  
The bázár would have become full of them like small shells.

- 83 The samundar is an animal, lizard-like, which dwells in the fire;  
when it comes forth from the fire, it dies. Sultáns make caps of its  
skin.

- 87 In former times, Súfís wore blue-coloured woollen garments.

- 89 Regard not their outward weakness; be not careless of their spiritual  
powerfulness.

They fasten not the (wooden) clog to themselves, juggler-like;

For, the wooden clog moves hardly from its place.

Companions of the house of retirement—"Am I your God?"

They are, with a draught, intoxicated until the blast of the trumpet (of Saráfil).

95 For the sword, they take not off their grasp from desire (of God);

For abstinence and love are as the mirror and the stone.

---

A certain one had a mistress in Samarkand; {  
(Thou wouldst say:—"She possessed sugar, in place of {  
speech."})

A beauty,—pledge taken from the sun!

Piety's foundation became ruined by her coquetry.

God Most High!—of beauty, to such a degree,  
That thou wouldst think it a sign of the mercy (of God)!

She used to walk;—and, eyes were behind her;  
Lover's hearts, life placed in exchange for her.

100 That lover used, covertly, to glance at her;

She once, with severity, looked; and, said:—

---

93 Not like jugglers do they display devotion, by way of deceit; for devotion on the foot is like the wooden clog, which goes with difficulty from place to place.

94 "Khilwat-sarâ'e" refers to—the covenant "Am I your God?" It means God's abode at that time.

95 As the stone shatters the mirror, so does love abstinence.

96 In the 'Iḵd-i-manzûm, couplets 96-113 are omitted.

97 The Sun pledged its goods for her beauty.

99 Men used to glance after her.

“ Oh perverse one ! so much, thou runst after me ;  
 “ Knowst thou not, that I am not the bird of thy net ?

“ If, again, I see thee (at my heels), with the sword,  
 “ Like an enemy, pitiless, I will cut off thy head.”

One said to him :—“ Now take thy resolve ;  
 “ Choose a more easy object than this one.

“ I think not thou mayst acquire this desire ;  
 “ God forbid ! that thou shouldst place thy life in the  
 heart’s desire.”

105 When he,—mad with love, heart-lost,—heard this reproach,  
 He drew forth with sorrow a cry from his heart,

Saying :—“ Allow,—that the wound of the sword of de-  
 struction  
 “ May cause my corpse to roll in blood and sweat.

“ Perhaps, before friend and enemy, they will speak,  
 “ Saying :—‘ This is one slain by her hand and sword ! ’

“ I see not the (way of) flight, from the dust of street ;  
 “ Say :—in tyranny, spill not my honour !

“ Oh self-worshipper ! For me,—thou dictatest repen-  
 tance ;

“ For thee,—repentance of this speech is better.

110 “ Pardon me ; for, whatever she does,

“ She does well—even if there be desire for my blood.

“ Every night, her fire (of love) causes me to burn ;

“ In the morning, I become alive by her pleasant perfume.

“ If, to-day, I die, in the street of my beloved,

“ In the Resurrection, I will pitch my tent by my beloved.”



Yield not, so long as thou canst, in this battle (of love);  
For Sa'dí is alive, whom love slew.

[A certain one thirsty was saying, while he surrendered his  
soul:—  
“Happy is that fortunate one, who in water died!”]

115 One of deficient understanding said to him,—“Oh wonder!  
“When thou art dead,—whether moist or dry of lip, what  
matter?”

He said:—“In the end, do I not make my mouth moist,  
“Until, I lay down even my precious life?”

The thirsty one falls into the deep basin;  
For, he knows that the one drowned dies water-satiated.

If thou art a lover, seize her skirt;  
And, if she says:—“Surrender thy life!” say:—“Take  
it.”

Thou mayst enjoy ease of life, at that time,  
When thou passest over the hill of non-existence.

120 The heart of seed-sowers may be afflicted;  
(But), when the harvest is accomplished, they sleep plea-  
santly.

In this assembly (of love to God), those arrive at their  
desire,

Who, in the last circulation, attain the cup (of love).

113 Lovers of God do not die. Sa'dí was a Šúfí.

118 Some say that “O” refers to God. The line will run:—seize the  
skirt of God.

121 “Daur-i-ákhīr” signifies—piyála, e ákhīrín-i-hazm-i-sharáb, the last  
circulation of the cup.

“Jám” signifies—jám-i-ma'rifat wa rísálat.

I have a tale of this sort—of the men of the way of God,  
Rich mendicants; king beggars;

—That an old man went, in the morning, for the purpose  
of begging;  
He beheld the door of a masjid; and, gave the mendicant's  
cry.

One said to him:—"This is not the people's house;  
"Where they give thee anything; stand not here, in im-  
pudence."

125 He said to him:—"Then, whose is this house,  
"In which, there is no bestowing (of alms) to any one?"

He said:—"Be silent; what faulty word is this?  
"The lord of this house is our Lord God!"

The old man glanced within; he beheld candle and  
prayer-arch,  
He drew forth, with burning, a lament from his liver.

Saying:—"It is a pity, to go farther hence;  
"It is a pity, to go disappointed from this door."

"In disappointment, I went not forth from any street;  
"Why should I go, yellow-of-face, from God's door?"

130 "Even here, I may make the hand of entreaty long;  
"For, I know that I may not return empty of hand."

I have heard that, for a year, he sate, a sojourner,  
Like those redress-seeking, hand-uplifted.

One night, the foot of his life descended into the clay (of  
death).

Through weakness, his heart began to palpitate.

---

122 Outwardly mendicants, inwardly rich.

Outwardly beggars, inwardly kings.

129 An Eastern becomes yellow, not pale, with fear or distress.

In the morning, a person brought a lamp near to his head ;  
He beheld a spark of life in him, like the morning-lamp.

From gladness, clamour-making, he kept saying :—  
“ Whosoever beats (knocks at) the door of the Merciful }  
One, that door becomes opened. }

135 The seeker of God must be patient and submissive ;  
I have not heard that the alchymist is (ever) dejected.

How much gold do they put in the obscure dust,  
That they may, possibly, one day, make a piece of copper  
gold !

Gold, for the sake of purchasing a thing, is good ;  
What wilt thou buy better than friend and lover ?

If through one, heart-ravishing,—thy heart is straitened,  
Another consoler may come to thy grasp.

For one of bitter face, endure not life-bitterness ;  
With the water (of beauty) of another, draw out the fire  
(of love) for her.

140 But if she have, in beauty, no equal ;  
Abandon her not, for a little heart-annoyance.

It is possible to disengage the heart from that one,  
Without whom, thou knowst it is possible to be content.

I heard that an old man kept awake the night ;  
In the morning, he raised the hand of need to God.

A voice from heaven cast into the old man's ear :—  
“ Thou art profitless ; go ; take thy own way.” *Impa.*

143 “ Sar-i-khwesh giriftan ” signifies—dar-kār-i-khud būdan.  
See couplet 103.

“ At this door (of God), thy prayer is unacceptable ;  
 “ Go, in contempt ; or stand, in lamentation.”

145 The next night, from recitation of the name of God and  
 devotion, he slept not ;  
 A disciple obtained news of his state, and said :—

“ When thou sawst that the door on that side was closed,  
 “ Endure not uselessly such a struggle.”

On his cheek, tears of ruby-colour  
 Rained, in regret ; and, he said :—“ Oh youth !

“ I would, in hopelessness, have turned away,  
 “ From this door, at the time when I could have found  
 another way.

“ Think not, if the friend broke the reins,  
 “ That I would take off the hand from his saddle-strap.

150 “ When the asker becomes disappointed at a door,  
 “ What grief, if he recognises another door ?

“ I have heard that my way is not in this street ;  
 “ But, there is not the semblance of another path.”

He was in this talk,—head on the ground of devotion,  
 When, in the ear of his soul, they uttered this sound :—

“ The prayer is accepted, though to him is no goodness ;  
 “ For save us, to him is no other shelter.”

---

A new young bride complains,  
 To an old man (her father), of her unkind husband,

---

150 But for me there is no other door.

154 In the 'Ik̄d-i-manẓúm, couplets 154–163 are omitted.

155 Saying:—"Approve not so much that, by this son (my husband),

"My time should pass in bitterness.

"Those (man and wife) who are with us in this lodging

"—I see not that they are, like me, disturbed in heart.

"The woman and man are together such friends, ]  
 "That thou mayst say—they are two kernels, and one ]  
 husk. ]

"During this time, on my husband's part, I have not seen,

"That, he once smiled in my face."

The old man of happy omen heard this speech;

The man of ancient years was speech-knowing.

160 He gave to her an answer, sweet and pleasant, ]  
 Saying:—"Endure the burden of his violence, if he be ]  
 beautiful of face." } V. 4. m. 2.

It is a pity to turn away from one,

Like whom, it is not possible to find another.

Why art thou arrogant with one who, if he be arrogant,

Draws the pen on the letter of (effaces) thy existence?

Acquiesce, slave-like, to the order of God;

For, thou seest not a master like Him.

---

One day, my heart burned (in pity) on account of a slave;

Who, while his master was selling him, was saying:—

165 "To thee,—many a slave, better than I, may chance;

"To me,—a master, like thee, no one may be.

---

In Marv, there was a physician of Parí cheek,  
Whose stature, in the garden of the heart, was a cypress.

To him,—no knowledge of the grief of torn hearts ;  
To him,—no knowledge of his own sick eye. )

A sorrowful wanderer relates a tale,  
Saying :—" Some time, I had love for the physician.

" I desired not my own health ;  
" Lest that the physician should not, again, come to me."

170 There is much strong, brave, wisdom,  
Which the passion of love subdues.

When the passion of love rubs wisdom's ear,  
Sense is unable, again, to raise its head.

---

A certain one established (by training) an iron grasp,  
Who wished to grapple with the lion.

When the lion drew him within his own grasp,  
He found not, again, any force in his own grasp.

---

166 In the 'Ikd-i-manẓúm, couplets 166-171 are omitted.

167 "Chashm-bimár" signifies—chashm-i-núm-khwáb, the eye, half-asleep,  
of lovers; red and intoxicated.

With the intoxication of the wine of beauty and loveliness, he was so  
intoxicated and senseless that, apart from (kaṭa'-i-nazar) the remedy for  
the heart-pain of lovers, he had not even knowledge of his own sick eye,  
so that he might prepare a remedy for it.

168 "Bá kase saram khúsh búd" signifies—

Bar kase 'áshik shudam.

Bá kase ta'ashshuk wa mail-i-dil dashtam.

See couplets 58 and 268.

One, at length, said to him :—" Why sleepest thou, woman-like ?

" Strike him (the lion) with the iron fist."

175 I heard that the wretch, beneath that (lion), said :—

" It is not possible with this grasp to battle with the lion."

When love becomes audacious, as to the wisdom of the sage,

This, indeed, is an iron grasp and a lion.

Thou art a woman, in the grasp of lion-men,  
What advantage may the iron grasp render thee ?

When love comes, speak not again of reason ;  
For the ball (of reason) is captive in the power of the  
Chaugán (of love).

---

Between two uncle-born ones, marriage occurred :  
Two of sun-face, of high descent.

180 To one (the wife)—it (the marriage) had chanced very agreeably ;

The other had become shunning and avoiding.

One possessed courtesy and Parí-like grace ;  
The other kept his face towards the wall.

---

175 The first line may otherwise be rendered :—

I heard the wretch in that (state) beneath (the lip) say :—

177 To obtain release, by the power of resolution and strong resolve, from the grasp of imperious lust, and to arrive at the stage of thy desire (like the pure lovers of desire, those life-playing in the valley of the knowledge of God), is a work and labour indeed.

179 In the 'Ikd-i-manzúm, couplets 179-187 are omitted.

180 "Zan rá az mard khúsh uftáda búđ" signifies—

(a) Ta'alluq wa mihr-i-tamám ba shauhar dásht.

(b) Zan ba shauhar rághib wa masrúr búđ.

The student should note the use of "uftádan" in these two lines.

One used to adorn her own body; *Y. S. m. p.*

The other used to ask for his own death from God.

The old men of the village caused the husband to sit (before them), *Y. S. m. p.*

Saying:—"To thee, is no love for her; to her, give the dowry."

He laughed and said:—"With a hundred sheep,  
"Deliverance from bonds is not loss!" *Y. S. m. p.*

185 The one of Parí-face, with her own nail, flayed her skin,  
Saying:—"With this number of sheep, how can I ever be  
patient, as to my friend?

"Not a hundred sheep, but six hundred thousand,

"Are unnecessary,—without seeing the face of my lover!"

Whatever keeps thee engaged with a friend,

—If thou desirest truth,—it is thy heart-ease (mistress).

A certain one to one of distraught state, wrote,

Saying:—"Desirest thou hell, or heaven?" *Y. S. m. p.*

He said:—"Ask not of me, this matter;

"I approve what He approves for me."

190 A certain one spoke to Majnún, saying:—"Oh one of  
auspicious foot!

"What happened to thee, that thou comest not again to  
Hayy?

"Perhaps, the passion for Laila, in thy brain, remains not;

"Thy fancy turns; and desire remains not?"

When the helpless one heard, he wept bitterly,

Saying:—"Oh sir! Keep thy hand from my skirt.



"I have, indeed, a heart,—sorrowful and torn ;  
 "Pour not thy salt on my wound. *S. Y. 2. 4.*

"Separation is not a proof of patience ;  
 "For, separation is often a necessity."

195 He said :—" Oh one fidelity-possessing, of happy disposition !

" Utter the message, which thou hast for Laila."

He replied :—" Take not my name before the beloved ;  
 " For (to mention) my name, where she is, is violence."

---

A certain one took reproach against Mahmúd of Ghaznín,  
 Saying :—" Áyáz has no (great) beauty. Oh wonder !

" The rose, which has neither colour nor perfume,—  
 " The nightingale's passion for it is wonderful."

One uttered this matter to Mahmúd ;  
 He writhed much on himself, in reflection,

200 Saying :—" Oh sir ! my love is for his disposition,  
 " Not, for his stature, and good height."

I heard that, in a defile, a camel  
 Fell ; and, a chest of pearls broke.

The king expanded his sleeve for plunder ;  
 And, thence urged his horse with speed.

The horsemen (of the retinue) went after the pearls and coral ;  
 They became, in search of plunder, separated from the king.

Of the attendants, neck-exalting, there remained  
 None, behind the king, save Áyáz.

205 He glanced, saying :—" Oh one heart-enchanted, fold in fold !

" What hast thou brought from the plunder ?" He replied :—" Nothing.

" I galloped in rear of thee ;

" I quitted not service for wealth."

If thou hast propinquity, in the Court (of God),  
Be not careless of the King, for wealth.

It is contrary to religion, that the friends of God ;  
Should ask for anything, save God, from God.

If, as to a friend, thy eye is intent upon his beneficence,  
Thou art in the desire of thyself, not in the desire of thy friend.

210

So long as thy mouth is open, through avarice ;  
The secret (of God) from the hidden comes not to the ear  
of the heart.

Truths are a decorated house ;  
Lust and concupiscence are dust up-raised.

Seest thou not, that wherever the dust has risen,  
The sight beholds not, though man be possessed of vision.

By chance I and an old man from Faryáb  
Arrived at a water (of a river) in the soil of the West.

205 " Dilbur pech pech " signifies—

(a) Maḥbúb-i-muzá'af wa mustahkam.

(b) Dil-rabáyanda dar kham-i-zulf-i-tábdár.

Oh heart-ravisher, in the curl of the curling-curl !

208 The Persians often use the Arabic plural in a singular sense, as :—

*Sing.* ḥúr      *Plur.* ḥurí.

„ ḥamám      „ ḥamámát.

211 Truths are a decorated house, around which lust and concupiscence are as dust up-raised. Therefore the eye of those possessed of avarice reaches not to it (the decorated house), and admittance to them is denied.

213 Faryáb is a town in Turkistán.

In the 'Iqd-i-manẓúm, couplets 213-236 are omitted.

I had one diram ; they took  
Me, in a boat ; and, left the darvesh.

- 215 The Ethiopians (boatmen) urged the vessel, like smoke ;  
For the commander of that vessel was one, God-not  
fearing.

From thought of my companion, to me weeping came ;  
He laughed a horse-laugh, at my weeping, and said :—

“ Oh one full of wisdom ! suffer not grief for my sake ;  
“ That One, who takes the boat, brings me.”

He spread the prayer-carpet on the surface of the water ;  
—I thought, is it fancy ; or (do I behold it) in a dream ?—

From amazement, my eye, that night, slept not ;  
In the morning, the old man glanced at me, and said :—

- 220 “ Oh friend of happy judgment ! remainst thou astonished ?  
“ A boat brought thee ! and, God me ! ”

Why do not the people of prayer believe to this extent,  
That certain pious men may go in water and fire ?

The child, who has no knowledge of fire,  
The loving mother protects.

Then those, who are immersed in religious fervour,  
Are, night and day, in the eye of the protection of God.

- 215 “ Ná-khudá ” is contracted from—náv-khudá. Had the commander  
of the vessel feared God he would have taken the darvesh.

- 221 “ Abdál ” (*sing.* badíl) are those by reason of whom God continues the  
world in existence ; they go fearlessly into fire and water, and pass un-  
harméd ; they are seventy in number, of whom forty are in Syria and  
the remainder elsewhere.

“ Ahl-i-da'wá ” signifies—ahl-i-dunyá, people attentive to the exterior,  
but who know not God from the heart (the Pharisee).

God preserves (Ibráhím) the friend of God from the heat  
of the fire ;

As the wooden-cradle of Musa (the speaker of God) from  
the whirl-pool of the Nile.

225 When a boy is in the hand of a swimmer,  
He fears not, though the Euphrates be broad.

How mayst thou walk on the surface of the sea,  
Like men (of God), when, on dry land, thou art wet of  
skirt (sin-stained) ?

Wisdom's path is not, save turning on turning ;  
Before holy men there is nothing, save God.

One can say this to the one truths-knowing ;  
But, the people of argument cavil,

Saying :—"Then the sky and earth—what are they ?"  
"The son of Adam, and rapacious and non-rapacious  
beasts what are they ?" *Amr.*

230 Oh wise man ! thou didst ask an approved matter ;  
If the answer be agreeable to thee, I will speak,

Saying :—"The plain, and sea, and mountain, and sky,  
"Parí and Ádam-born, and demon, and angel—

"All, whatever they are,—are less than He ;  
"For, they took the name of existence by His existence.

225 In the first line "bar" is redundant.

228 "Ḥaḳá-ik-shinás" signifies—'urfá (*sing.* 'árif), those who make a  
certainty of attaining their objects by purification and bringing them-  
selves to perfection.

"Ahl-i-ḳiyás" signifies—sages who make proof of religious points by  
sight and argument.

232 The author utters not a negation as to their existence, for all things  
are of God ; without Him there is nothing, as is the belief of some sects  
of Šúfís.

“ Before thee, the sea, in wave-motion, is mighty ;  
 “ The shining sun, in the zenith, is lofty.

“ But, how do people of external form find the trace,  
 “ To the country, where the lords of truth are ?

235 “ Saying :—‘ If it be a sun, it is not even an atom ;  
 “ And, if it be seven rivers, it is not even a drop of water.’ ”

When the Sultán of Honour (God) draws forth His  
 standard (appears),  
 The world draws its head into the collar of non-existence.

The Ra, is of a village, with his son, on a certain road,  
 Passed by the centre of a monarch’s army.

The son beheld the heralds, and sword, and battle-axe ;  
 Coats of satin, waist-belts of gold.

Warriors, bow-possessing, and prey-striking ;  
 Slaves, quiver-bearing, and arrow-casting.

---

According to the author, the possible existence (of a creation) in connection with the necessary existence (God the Creator) is in the stage of nonentity ; and, though possibilities (of creation) are great, they are small in comparison with the greatness of God. *Amib.*

With the Šúfís the display of argument on the part of sages is impossible, for they say that reason, in the understanding of this, is dismissed, even as in the understanding of probabilities the senses are out of office.

They call the Šúfís “ *ṭā,ifa,e wujúdiya.* ” The word Šúfí comes from the Arabic word “ *šúf* ” signifying wool. In former days the Šúfís wore a blue woollen garment of harsh texture ; for good clothing could not then be made of wool. In Persia, the educated people are in favour of Šúfí-ism. The belief, set forth in couplet 232, is attributed to Revelation and Apocalypse.

234 “ *Ahl-i-šúrat* ” signifies—*ašháb-i-záhir*, which is opposed to *ahl-i-ma’ní*.

235 To those regarding God’s grandeur, the sun, world-illuminating, is less than an atom.

240 This one,—a garment of painted silk on his body ;  
That one,—a royal cap on his head.

The son, when he beheld all that pomp and splendour,  
Saw the exceeding meanness of his father,

Whose state changed, and whose colour went ;  
From fear, he fled to a cave.

The son said, at length, to him :—" Thou art the Ra, is of  
a village ; ~~Y. 3. 3.~~  
" Thou art, in chieftainship, of the great ones. "

" What chanced to thee, that thou didst sever the hope of  
life ;

" Didst tremble, willow-like, with the blast of terror ? "

245 He replied :—" Yes ; I am chief, and order-giver ;  
" But, my honour is (only) so long as I am in the village. "

The great ones (holy men) are terror-struck, on that  
account,

That they have been in the Court of the King (God).

Oh simpleton ! thou art, in the village, inasmuch  
As thou attributest such importance to thy own person.

The eloquent uttered no word,  
On which, Sa'dí utters not a parable.

Perhaps, thou mayst have seen, in the garden or meadow,  
how

The fire-fly gleams at night, lamp-like ?

243 In the second line the second "sar" is redundant.

249 "Kirmake" comes from "kirm." The "ak" is added to render the word diminutive ; the final "e" is "yá,e wahdat."

- 250 One said to it:—"Oh fire-fly, night-illuminating!  
 "What is the matter with thee, that thou comest not forth  
 by day?"

Behold—the fiery fire-fly, earth-born,  
 What answer it gave from its head of luminosity.

"Day and night, save in the desert, I am not;  
 "But, in the sun's presence, I am not manifest."

In a city of Syria, tumult occurred;  
 They seized an old man of happy nature.

Within my ear, still is that speech,  
 —When they placed fetters on his feet and hands,—

- 255 Which he uttered:—"If the Sultán (God) makes not the  
 signal,  
 "To whom, is there the boldness to plunder?"

It is proper to hold such an enemy (the plunderer), a friend;  
 For, I know the Friend (God) appointed him over me.

If there be respect and rank; or, if contempt and bonds,—  
 I know that they come from God, not from 'Umar and Zayd.

Oh wise man! have no fear of disease;  
 For, the Physician (God) sends bitter medicine.

Enjoy whatever comes from the hand of the friend;  
 The sick one is not wiser than the physician.

- 260 A certain one uttered praise as to Sa'd (son) of Zangí;  
 Saying:—"May there be much mercy on his tomb!"

257 "'Umar va Zayd" stand for—A. and B.

260 For the examination for "High-Proficiency," couplets 260–267 are omitted.

He gave money, and a dress of honour; and cherished him;  
Prepared for him, a dignity conformable to his skill.

When he saw—"Alláh va bas,"—on a picture of gold,  
He was agitated; and plucked off the robe from his body.

From perturbation, such a flame caught his soul,  
That he arose, and took the path to the desert.

One of those desert-sitting said to him:—

"What sawst thou, that thy state became changed?"

265 "Thou didst, first, kiss the ground in three places;  
"Thou shouldst not, in the end, strike the back of the  
foot (on the gold)."

He laughed, saying:—"First, from fear and hope,  
"A trembling, willow-like, fell on my limbs.

"Finally, from the majesty of—"Alláh va bas" }  
"Neither thing, nor person, appeared (worthy) in my }  
eye." } *Smk*

Of a certain one like me, the heart to the power of a  
person  
Was pledged; and, he endured much contempt.

After (regarding him for) learning and wisdom,  
They proclaimed him by (beat of) drum for madness.

262 "Alláh va bas" signifies—Alláh káfí; the word "va" is redundant.  
On seeing the illumination of "Alláh va bas," which, in gold, was embroidered on that robe, he severed his heart from the world; and drawing it off from his shoulder, in perturbation, rent it.

265 "Zadan pusht-i-pá,e" signifies—lakad zadan; tark zadan.

268 "Dil ba dast-i-kase girán búdan" signifies—bar kase 'áshik shudan.  
See couplet 168.

In the 'Ikd-i-manzûm, couplets 268 to 283 are omitted.



270 For the friend, he used to bear the violence of the enemy;  
For the poison (even) of a friend is a great antidote.

He used to suffer pushing on the back of the head, from  
the hands of his friends;  
Forehead brought forward (to the blows) nail-like.

Fancy made tumult as to his head, in such a way,  
That, it made the roof of his brain kick-suffering.

Of his friends' reproaching, to him was no knowledge,  
As one drowning has no knowledge of rain.

He, whose heart's foot has come against the stone (of love)  
Reflects not regarding the gloss of name and fame.

275 One night the demon (Shaitán) made himself like one of  
Parí-face;  
He hastened into that young man's embrace.

In the morning, to him, was no power of prayer;  
Of his friends none was acquainted with his secret.

He plunged into a piece of water, near the roof (building),—  
A marble-door, on it ice fixed.

An adviser began to reproach,  
Saying:—"Thou wilt kill thyself, in this cold water."

From the just youth, a cry issued,  
Exclaiming:—"Oh friend! be silent as to so much  
reproach.

270 Everything from a friend's hand is good.

271 *Kafá khurdan* " signifies—*gardaní khurdan*, to suffer pushing, by  
nape of the neck seizing.

275 "Bar wai" should be—*burná*. See couplet 268.

277 The cold had fixed a door of ice upon the surface of the water.

280 “ Five days, this boy fascinated my heart ;  
 “ For love of him, I am in such a state that I cannot be  
 patient.

“ He asked not once, with sweet throat, (as to my con-  
 dition),  
 “ Behold,—how long I endure, with soul, the burden of  
 his tyranny.

“ Then as to Him,—who created my body from the dust ;  
 “ Created within it, by His power, the pure soul,—

“ Hast thou wonder, if I bear the burden of His order,  
 “ When I am perpetually immersed in His beneficence and  
 grace ? ”

If thou art a man of love, lose thyself ;  
 And, if not,—take the path of ease.

285 Fear not that God may, through love, make thee clay ;  
 For thou remainst, if God destroys thee.

*From true grains, vegetation springs not, }  
 Unless, first, dust gathers about them. } V. Imp.*

That gives thee acquaintance with God,  
 Which gives thee deliverance from thy own hand.

280 See couplets 268, 275.

284 “ Gum *khwesh gir* ” signifies—

(a) *Ikhtiyár-i-nístí kun*.

(b) *Tark-i-khudí kun, va dar yád-i-ma'shúk khud vá farámosh kun*.

In the '*Tá'd-i-manzúm*, couplets 284–304 are omitted.

285 Fear not that God may through love make thee clay, or destroy thee ;  
 for thou wilt obtain everlasting life from this non-existence.

286 Change of state is the cause of fruition.

287 So long as thou art a captive to thyself thou canst not have know-  
 ledge of God.

For, so long as thou art self-possessing, the path to thyself  
is not;

And, with this subtlety, the self-less one only is acquainted.

Not the musician,—but the sound of the animal's hoof,  
Is song (*samá'*), if thou hast love (to God) and passion  
(for Him).

290 The fly beats not its wings, before the one heart-dis-  
traught,

Who strikes not, fly-like, his hands on his head.

The one distraught in affairs (the lover of God) knows  
neither the bass nor the treble note;

The fakir weeps at the voice of the fowl.

The Singer (God) Himself becomes not silent;

But, not every time, is the ear open.

When those distraught practise wine-adoration,  
They express intoxication, at the sound of the water-wheel.

Like a water-wheel, they begin gyrating;  
Like a water-wheel, they weep bitterly on themselves.

288 So long as thou art not self-less (*beḵhud*), thou knowst not thyself  
—who thou art or whence thou camest, as they have said:—

“Whosoever regards himself self-less, he is informed.”

290 If a fly beat its wings before the lover of God, he becomes enraptured  
at the sound; strikes, fly-like, his hands on his head, and exhibits  
ecstasy and “*samá'*.”

“*Samá'*” signifies—hearing, song, the circular dance of the darvesh.

291 “*Bum*” signifies—*áwáz-i-girán*, a great noise.

“*Zer*” signifies—*áwáz-i-sabuk wa barík wa narm*, a quick, gentle, and  
soft note.

292 The hidden Singer and Player (God) is never silent and never reposes;  
but the hearer's ear is not always open.

293 When those distraught with the wine of the love of God, and with  
the draught of the worshippers of the wine-tavern of love, come into  
tumult by reason of the intoxication of the wine of love, and into  
clamour by the intoxication of the wine of affection, they display rapture  
and ecstasy at the sound of the water-wheel.

295 With resignation, they carry their head into the collar (of reflection);

When power (of patience) remains not, they rend the collar (in perturbation).

Reproach not the darvesh, bewildered and intoxicated (with love),

Who is immersed in the sea of God; for that reason, he strikes hand and foot.

Oh brother! I say not samá', what it is (lawful, or not);  
Perhaps, I know not the hearer, who he is (a lover of God, or not)?

295 "Sar dar girīban burdan" signifies—

(a) Gardan nihādan.

(b) Muráqibat kardan.

(c) Fikr wa andesha kardan.

In resignation to God, they sit, head on the knee of reflection; and whenever, in the stage of witnessing the splendour of God, power of restraining the effulgence of the rays of glory remains not, they rend the collar in perturbation.

296 In the phraseology of Šúfī-ism the hearing of a pleasant sound is "samá'." By a certain quality this sound brings the hearer into motion, as they have said:—

"The hearing of a pleasant modulated sound is the inciter of the heart."

When the hearer comes, by reason of this sound, into motion, I observe that the motion is either modulated, or not modulated. If it be modulated, they call it *dancing* (rakş), and, if not modulated, *agitation* (iẓtiráb), or "samá'."

When the "samá'" is the cause of motion, they call the motion itself "samá'," after the fashion of naming the thing caused (rakş) by the name of the cause (samá').

When a person hears this pleasant sound, a certain state, called ecstacy (wajd) is created within him. When, involuntarily, not through sport or in the way of the sinner, such a state (wajd) is produced within him, "samá'" is lawful, otherwise unlawful. The impropriety (hurmat) of sport and mirth, on hearing a pleasant sound, is not because the "samá'" is modulated, or that it is a pleasant sound. The listening to modulated metrical utterances of God's word, and the traditions of His Prophet, and the words of pious men, and to nightingales and men of fine voice, would then have been unlawful; but no one has said so.

If from the tower of truth (of God), his bird (soul) flies,  
The angel remains below his journeying.

If he be a man of sport and pastime and mirth,  
The demon (of lust) becomes stronger within his brain.

300 How is the lust-worshipper a man of samá' ?  
At the pleasant sound, the one sleeping rises, not the one  
intoxicated.

By the moving wind, the rose becomes disturbed ;  
Not, the fire-wood, which one can split only with an axe.

The world is full of samá', and intoxication, and distraction,  
But, what does the blind man behold in the mirror ?

---

299 The difference between song (sarod) and melody (naghma) depends  
upon the degree of ability and rank of the hearer.

If the bird of fancy is the hearer from the tower of the knowledge of  
God (that is, the nest of truth, "ma'ní," is in his fancy), his flight will  
reach to a place where the angel is impotent as to his flight.

But, if he be a lust-worshipper, his imperious lust will become  
stronger, and will incline him to his sins.

300 "Mard-i-samá'" signifies—kábil-i-samá'.

The lust-worshipper is incapable of hearing "samá'" and song (sarod),  
for he is in the sleeping stage [careless of intoxication (mastí) and the  
relish of the love of God], not intoxicated and senseless with wine of the  
love of God. He, sleeping, becomes awake at the pleasant sound.

The lovers of God are all, with wine of love, intoxicated and senseless.

Again :—He who is a lust-worshipper is not of the people of "samá'."  
When the lovers of God hear the sound of the song of praise to God,  
the hearing of such sound is lawful. Hence, they have said :—

"'Samá'" is lawful to that one to whom the sound of the harp  
and of the shutting of a door are the same as regards enjoyment and  
pleasure."

301 The one, rose-like (tender), is affected by everything.

302 Those of blind heart find not God. They say that 'Alí (may God be  
satisfied with him !) heard the sound of a conch. One who was with  
him asked, "Understandest thou what this conch says ?"

Another of the assembly replied, "God and His Prophet, and the  
Cousin of His Prophet ('Alí) know."

Then 'Alí said, "This conch exclaims 'Oh God ! Oh God ! Oh God !  
Oh truth ! Oh truth ! Oh truth !'"

Seest thou not—the camel at the rousing of the Arab's  
 (recitation),  
 How joy brings him to dancing?

What! the camel has, in his head, tumult and joy;  
 If a man has not—he is an ass.

305 A young man of sugar-lip used to blow the flute;  
 In such a way, that he used to burn hearts in the fire,  
 reed-like.

The father, oftentimes, hurled shouts at him,  
 With severity; and, used to set fire to the flute.

One night, he listened to his son's performance;  
 The hearing of it made him confused and senseless.

The father spoke—sweat cast up on his face,  
 Saying :—"This time, the reed (flute) set fire to me."

Knowst thou not—the intoxicated phrenzied ones  
 Why they spread forth the hands in dancing?

310 Through events, a door opens on his heart,  
 He scatters his hand as to (abandons) the universe.

In memory of his Friend (God), dancing was lawful to him,  
 In whose every sleeve is a soul.

303 On their journeys the Arabs recite poetry. The camels become joyful  
 and display celerity.

305 Observe the rare meaning of "ámokhtan." Here it means "na-  
 wákh<sup>h</sup>tan."

In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 305-314 are omitted.

310 "Wáridát" (*sing.* wárid) signifies — házir shavanda: In the  
 phraseology of Súfí-ism, wárid means that which descends into the  
 heart without the labour of acquisition.

311 Whosoever has these qualities, that thou mayst say "A soul of truth  
 is in his sleeve," dancing and hand-scattering (abandoning) are to him  
 lawful, in order that he may scatter the ready money of life on the  
 head of his friend, and the jewel of faith (in Islám) on his feet.

I allow—that thou art vigorous in swimming;  
Naked,—thou canst better strike the hand and foot.

Pluck off the ragged garments of name and reputation,  
and hypocrisy;  
For a man, powerless by his garment, may be drowned.

Worldly connection is a veil, and profitless;  
When thou breakst the ligature, thou art one joined (to  
God).

---

315 A person said to a moth:—"Oh contemptible one!  
"Go; take a friend suitable to thyself, *amr-i-dun-yaviy*

"Go on such a path, that thou mayst see the way of hope;  
"Thou, and the love of the candle is from where to where?

"Thou art not the samundar; circle not around the fire;  
"For, manliness is (first) necessary (for man), then conflict.

"The blind mouse (bat) goes hidden from the sun;  
"For, force is foolish against an iron grasp.

---

312 "Giriftan" signifies—farz kardan.

In the sea of love, calamity-exciting, and in the sea of the knowledge of God, blood-shedding, thou canst not swim with the garments of fame and reputation, nor with the raiment of fraud and hypocrisy.

Then pluck off the garment of existence from thy back; cast off the ragged robe of worldly affections from thy breast.

314 "Ta'alluk" signifies—ta'alluk-i-hirş va hawâ, e nafsânî va amr-i-dun-yaviy.

"Wâşil," in Şúfî-ism, signifies—one who has escaped from himself; joined God Most High; dived into the sea of non-existence; and carried his foot to the shore of existence, so that his trace is not visible, just as a drop in the ocean becomes untraceable.

"Hijáb" signifies—a veil, or hinderer of union, between thee and God.

316 The candle is a burner, and thou (the moth) hast a capacity for burning. The love of the candle, which is the enemy of thy life, befits thee not.

“ The person, whom thou knowst to be thy enemy ;  
 “ To take for a friend is not (the part) of wisdom.”

320 No one says to thee :—“ Thou dost do good  
 “ When thou placest thy life in the desire of his love.

“ The beggar who, of a king, asked (in marriage) for his  
 daughter,  
 “ Suffered pushing on the back of his head, and nurtured  
 a vain passion.

“ How may she bring into reckoning a lover like thee,  
 “ For, the faces of kings and sultáns are towards her ?

“ Think not that, in such an assembly, she  
 “ Will exercise courtesy to a poor one like thee.

“ Or if she practise gentleness towards the whole creation,  
 “ —Thou art a helpless one ;—she will exercise severity  
 to thee.”

325 Behold ! the ardent moth  
 What it said :—“ Oh wonder displayer ! if I burn, what  
 fear ?

“ Like Ibráhím, a fire (of love) is in my heart,  
 “ That, thou mayst consider this (candle-) flame is to me  
 a rose.

319 . “ Ján dar sar-kár-i-kase kardan ” signifies—

Fidá sákh̄tan-i-ján dar sar o kár-i-kase, wa 'umr-i-khud širf  
 namúdan.

320 “ Sar o kár ” signifies—

(a) Awwal kár wa kár-i-ákh̄ir.

(b) Saudá, e 'ishk̄.

322 This may be rendered :—

Into reckoning, a lover like thee, how may that one bring,  
 Towards whom the faces of kings and sultáns are (turned) ?

325 “ 'Ajab ” signifies—ta'ajjub kunanda.

326 Nimrúd threw Ibráhím into the fire. God made the fire a rose-garden  
 for Ibráhím's sake.



- “ My heart draws not the skirt of the ravishing one (the candle) ;  
 “ But its love draws the collar of my soul.  
 “ Voluntarily, I take not myself to the fire ;  
 “ But, the chain of love is about my neck.  
 “ Even so, I was far, when it burned me ;  
 “ Not this moment, when the fire of love kindled in me.  
 330 “ A beloved one, in regard to loveliness, does not do that,  
 “ That one can speak to her of continence.  
 “ Who reproaches me for love of the friend,  
 “ When, slain at the friend’s foot, I am content ?  
 “ Knowst thou, why I have a lust for destruction,  
 “ When it (the candle) is, if I am not,—it is proper.  
 “ I will burn because it is the approved beloved,  
 “ In whom, the burning of the friend (the moth) makes  
     circulation.  
 “ How long speakst thou to me, saying :—‘ Suitable to  
     thyself  
 “ ‘ Get a companion, compassionate to thyself ? ’  
 335 “ Admonition to that one of distraught state is as if  
 “ Thou shouldst say to one scorpion-bitten—lament not !  
 “ Oh astonished one ! utter not advice to that person,  
 “ In whom, thou knowst that it will take no effect.  
 “ To the helpless one, rein-gone from the hand,  
 “ They say not :—‘ Oh boy ! urge slowly.’ ”

327 I am not the allurer of my beloved ; but, love is my allurer.

336 “ Shiguft ” signifies—muta’ajjib.

337 In the ‘Ikḍ-i-manẓūm, couplets 336-347 are omitted.

How pleasantly occurred this witticism in the book—Sind-

bád :—

—“ Oh son ! love is fire ; advice, wind.”

The fierce fire, by the wind, becomes more lofty ;  
The panther, by striking, becomes more angry.

340 When I saw, thoroughly, thou doest evil,  
That thou placest my face opposite to one like thyself.

Seek one better than thyself, and reckon it gain ;  
For, with one like thyself, thou lovest time.

The self-worshippers go in pursuit of such as themselves ;  
Those intoxicated of God go in a dangerous street (of love).

When I first possessed desire for this work,  
I took up, at once, my heart from desire (of life).

One head-casting is true as a lover ;  
For, one of white-liver is the lover of himself.

345 Death, in ambush, suddenly, slays me ;  
It is better, indeed, that the delicate one should slay me.

When, doubtless, destruction is written on my head,  
Destruction (is) most pleasant, by the hand of the beloved.

Dost thou not, one day, in helplessness, yield the soul ?  
Then, it is best thou surrender it, at the feet of the beloved.

One night, I recollect that my eyes slept not ;  
I heard that a moth spoke to a candle,

---

338 Síndbád is a work on philosophy, maxims, counsel, and sage precepts.

340 No one is profited by association with one like himself.

343 “ Sar dáshtana ” signifies—dar sar kardan.

“ Sar bar dáshtan ” signifies—tark-i-sar kardan.

344 “ Bad-zuhra ” (*lit.* of bad liver) is here rendered white-liver.

“ Sar andáz ” is one who sports with his head (life).

Saying :—" I am a lover ; if I burn, it is lawful,  
 " Wherefore is thy weeping and burning ? "

350 It replied :—" Oh my poor lover !  
 " Honey (wax), my sweet friend, has departed from me.

" When sweetness (wax) goes away from me,  
 " Like (the statuary) Farhad, fire goes to my head."

The candle kept speaking,—and, every moment, a torrent  
 of grief  
 Ran down, on its yellow cheeks,—

Saying :—" Oh claimant ! love is not thy business ;  
 " For, thou hast neither patience, nor the power of  
 standing.

" Thou dost fly from before a naked flame ;  
 " I am standing, until I completely burn.

355 " If the fire of love burns thy feathers,  
 " Behold me, whom it burns from head to foot.

" Observe not my splendour, assembly-illuminating ;  
 " Consider the heat and torrent of my heart-burning.

" Like Sa'dí, whose outward form is illuminated ;  
 " But, if thou lookst,—his vitals are burned."

A portion of the night, even so, had not passed,  
 When one of Parí-face, suddenly, extinguished it.

While its smoke rose to its head, it kept saying :—  
 " Oh son ! this is indeed the end of love ! "

357 Sa'dí was "ahl-i-hál." See couplet l.

358 A little of the night yet remained.

359 The end of love is to surrender one's life.

- 360 This is the way (of God), if thou wilt learn ;  
By being slain, thou wilt obtain ease from the burning (of  
love).

Make not lamentation over the grave of one slain by the  
friend ;

Say :—" Praise be to God ! that he is accepted by Him."

If thou art a lover, wash not the hand of sickness (of love).  
Wash the hand, like Sa'dí, of (worldly) design.

The one who sacrifices his life keeps not his hand from his  
object,

Though they rain arrow and stone on his head.

I said to thee " Beware ; go not to the ocean ;  
" But, if thou goest, entrust thy body to the storm."

- 360 By dying, thou wilt obtain everlasting life.  
Observe that " kushtan " is used to express in couplet—  
358, the extinguishing of a candle.  
360, the slaying of a man.
- 362 The first line means—be always sick (with love).
- 363 " Fidá,i " is one who casts himself into dangerous places, regardless  
of life, for the sake of his beloved.

## CHAPTER IV.

## ON HUMILITY.

THE pure Lord created thee from dust,  
Then, oh slave, practise humility like dust.

Be not avaricious, and world-consuming, and head-strong;  
Of dust, He created thee; be not like fire.

When the horrent fire exalted its neck,  
The dust cast down its body in abjectness.

When that (the fire) showed head-exaltation; this, abase-  
ment;  
They made—of that, a demon; of this, a man.

---

5 A rain-drop dropped from a cloud;  
It became ashamed, when it beheld the amplitude of the  
ocean.

---

2 Some say that the phrase "world-consuming" qualifies "harís."

4 Couplets 4 and 5 form a "kaṭ'a-band."

In the 'Iḳd-i-manẓúm, couplets 5 to 21 are omitted.

The Qurán says:—"Verily, we have created man from black clay, kneaded; and, before his creation, jinn, from red fire, flame-possessing and burning.

"Tan ba bechárágí andákhtan" signifies —

Tawázú' farotaní kháksári kardan.

Saying :—" Where the ocean is, what am I ?  
 "If it be ; by God ! then, I am not."

When it regarded itself with the eye of contempt,  
 A shell cherished it with fervour in its bosom.

The sky caused its work to reach to the place (of honour),  
 Where, it became the famous royal pearl.

It obtained loftiness, in that it became low ;  
 It beat the door of non-existence, until it became existent.

10 A wise youth of pure disposition  
 Came forth from the sea, at the barrier of Rúm.

They observed in him,—excellence, and austerity, and discretion ;

They placed his chattels in a precious place (a masjid).

One day, the chief of the 'Ábids (the shaikh) spoke to the man,

Saying :—" Sweep up the chips and dust of the masjid."

As soon as the man, road-travelling (to God) heard this speech,

He went forth ; and, none saw again a trace of him.

The religious brethren (the Súfís), and the shaikh conjectured,

Saying :—" The fakír has no solicitude for service."

15 The next day, a servant (of the monastery) seized him on the road,

Saying :—" Through faulty judgment, thou didst not well."

12 "Sar-i-sálihán" signifies—imám ; shaikh ; peshwá, e neko kárán.

13 "Ráh-rau" signifies—sálik ; ravanda, e shari'yat va taríkat va haqíkat.

‘ Oh boy, self-approving! knowst thou not,

"That by service, men attain to rank?"

From the power of truth and ardour, he began to weep, } V. Ganga  
Saying :—" Oh friend, life-cherishing, heart-illuminating! }

"In that abode (the masjid), I beheld neither dust, nor  
refuse;

"In that pure place, I (only) was polluted.

"I consequently took the retreating step,  
"Saying:—'The masjid pure of dust and chips (myself)  
is well.'"

20 For the darvesh, there is only this path ;  
That he hold his own body subjected.

Is exaltation necessary to thee? Choose humility;  
For there is only this ladder to that roof (of exaltation).

I have heard that, once upon a time, on the morning of  
an 'íd,  
Báyizid came out of the hot bath.

22 They call him Báyzid the Bustání; but his name was ʿĀifūr bin ʿYsa bin Ādam Surshán. His death occurred in A.H. 281 or 304.

Abú Músa, his disciple, says that Báyzid relates :—

In a dream I beheld God Most High. I said, "How is the path to Thee?" He replied, "When thou passest out of thyself, thou arrivest."

In a dream they beheld Báyzid, after death, and asked, "What is thy state?" He replied, "The angels said to me, 'Oh, old man, what hast thou brought?' I said, 'When a darvesh goes to a king's country, they say not to him, "What broughtst thou?" but "What wishest thou?"'"

Bāyizid, at the time of death, said:—

“Neither did I worship Thee, save with negligence ;  
Nor did I serve Thee, save with carelessness.”

A certain one, unknowingly, a basin of ashes,  
Cast down, from a house, on his head.

He spoke,—turban and hair polluted,  
Rubbing the palm of his hand thankfully on his face,—

25 Saying :—“ Oh lust of mine ! I am worthy of the fire (of  
hell) ;  
“ Why draw I together my face for a single ash ? ”

The great showed not regard to themselves ;  
Desire not God-beholding from one self-beholding.

Greatness is not in reputation and speech ;  
Exaltation is not in pretension and conceit.

Humility exalts the head of thy sublimity ;  
Arrogance casts thee to the dust.

One, head-extending, of fierce temper falls to the neck (in  
a pit) ;  
Is exaltation necessary to thee ?—seek not exaltation.

30 Seek not for ~~the~~ way of Islám from one world-proud ;  
Seek not God-beholding from one self-beholding.

If rank be necessary to thee,—like the mean,  
Look not at persons, with the eye of contempt.

How may the sensible man entertain the idea,  
That high worth is in head-mightiness ?

30 In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 30 to 41 are omitted.

“Maghrúr-i-dunyá” signifies—one in love with the pomp of the world.



Seek not rank more renowned than this,  
That the people should call thee :—"One of approved dis-  
position."

No ;—when one like thyself uses haughtiness to thee,  
Thou, with wisdom's eye, considerst him not great.

- 35 If thou displayst arrogance,—thou also, even so,  
Appearest, as those haughtiness-displaying appear to thee.

When thou art standing on the lofty house,  
—If thou art wise—laugh not at the fallen.

There came down off his feet, many a standing one,  
Whose place, the fallen took.

I allow that thou art thyself free from defect ;  
Exercise not reproaching on the faulty.

This one has, in his hand, the door-ring of the Ka'ba ;  
That one is fallen, intoxicated, in the tavern.

- 40 If God calls this one,—who may not permit him ?  
And, if He drives away that one,—who may bring him  
back ?

Neither is that one strength-finder by his own (good)  
deeds !

Nor for this one is the door of repentance shut in the face.

---

A compiler of the traditions, thus related, in talk,—  
That, in the time of 'Īsa (on Him be peace !)

A certain one had squandered his life ;  
Had passed it in ignorance and error.

---

42 This tale occurs in the Bible, Luke xviii. 10-13.

One bold, of black deeds, of hard heart ;  
Through his uncleanness, Iblís was ashamed of him.

45 His time, uselessly accomplished ;  
Through him, not a single soul rested, so long as he lived.

His head void of wisdom, but full of grandeur ;  
His belly fat with forbidden morsels.

With non-uprightness, one, garment-stained,  
With shamelessness, one, house-plastered.

Neither one of foot straight-travelling, like those seeing ;  
Nor one of ear, like the man, advice-hearing.

The people fleeing from him, like the bad year ;  
Pointing him out, together from afar, like the new moon.

50 His harvest (of life) lust and concupiscence burned ;  
A grain of good repute ungathered.

He of black deeds urged his pleasure in such a way,  
That, in the Book, no place for writing (his deeds) remained.

A sinner, and one self-opiniated, and lust-worshipper,  
Night and day, in carelessness, drunk and intoxicated.

I heard that 'Ísa entered from the desert ;  
He passed by the cell of a certain 'Ábid.

The recluse came down from a window ;  
He fell, head on the earth, at His feet.

49 As people dislike the bad (drought) year and avoid it, so they fled from him, and pointed him out, with the finger, from afar.

In some copies, "sále búd" occurs instead of "chú sál-i-bad" ; the first line will then run :—

Like the year, the people were fugitives from him.

The word "sále" (a year) is introduced, in this case, to mark excessive avoidance and abhorrence ; for, a year is a long period of time.

55 From afar, the ill-starred sinner,  
Moth-like, astonished at them, by (their) splendour.

Reflecting, with regret, ashamed;  
Darvesh-like before one wealth-possessing.

Ashamed, beneath his lip excuse-asking, with heart-  
burning,  
On account of whole nights passed in carelessness.

Tears of grief raining, cloud-like, from his eye,  
Saying :—" Alas ! my life in carelessness passed.

" I threw away the ready money of dear life ;  
" A particle of goodness unacquired.

60 " Let there never be one, like me, living ;  
" For, his death (is) much better than his living.

" That one escaped, who died in childhood !  
" For, he bore not the aged head of shame (to the grave).

" Oh World-Creator ! pardon my sin ;  
" For, if it come with me (to the Resurrection) it will be  
a bad companion."

In this corner, the old sinner weeping,  
Saying :—" Oh hand-seizer ! come to the complaint of my  
state."

His head, in shame lowered,  
The water of remorse, with lamentation and desire running.

65 And, on that side,—the 'Ābid, head full of pride,  
His eye-brows gathered together, on the sinner from afar.

Saying :—" Why is this wretch behind us ?  
" The ignorant unfortunate one ! what ! is he of the same  
sort as we ?

“ One steeped to the neck in fire ;  
 “ One life-given to the wind of lust.

“ What good came from his soul, wet of skirt,  
 “ That he is society for Masîh (the Messiah) and me ?

“ Well would it have been, if he had taken the trouble (of  
     his person) from before me ;  
 “ (If) he had gone to hell, after his own deeds.

70 “ I am constantly vexed by his unpleasant countenance ;  
 “ Lest that the fire of his sins should fall on me.

“ At the place of assembling, when the assembly becomes  
     present,  
 “ Oh God ! make not Thou my assembling with him.”

In this, he was ; and, from the One of glorious qualities, a  
     revelation  
 Came to 'Îsa,—on Him be blessing !—

Saying :—“ If this one be learned, and that one ignorant,  
 “ The prayers of both have come to My acceptance.

“ The one of wasted time, and inverted days,  
 “ Bewailed before Me, with weeping and heart-burning.

75 “ Whosoever comes to Me, in helplessness,  
 “ Him, I cast not down from the threshold of mercy.

“ I pass over his ugly (sinful) deeds ;  
 “ I bring him, by My own grace, into Paradise.

“ But, if the devotion-zealot has shame,  
 “ That he should be fellow-sitting with him in Paradise,

“ Say—Have no shame of him, on the Resurrection Day ;  
 “ For, they will carry that one (the sinner) to heaven ;  
     and, this one to hell.

“ If the liver of that became blood, through heart-burning  
and sorrow ;

“ And, if this one relied on his own devotion,

80 “ Knew he not that in the Court of the Independent One  
(God),

“ Helplessness is better than pride and presumption ?

“ Whose garment is pure, but walk of life impure,—

“ For him, no key to hell’s door is necessary.

“ At this threshold of God, thy weakness and wretchedness

“ Are better than thy devotion, and self-beholding.”

When thou reckonedst thyself among the good, thou art  
bad ;

Self-sufficiency is not contained in godship.

If thou art a man, speak not of thy own manliness,  
Not every jockey carries off the ball (of victory).

85 He is an onion, all husk,—that one skill-less,  
Who thought there was, within him, a brain pistachio-nut-  
like.

Devotion of this sort is of no use ;

Go ; bring excuse for the fault of thy devotion.

That ignorant one enjoys not the fruit of devotion,  
Who to himself is good ; and, to the people bad.

Whether a vagabond of confused distracted fortune ;  
Or, a devotee, who, on his body, practises severity—what  
difference ?

81 The key to hell’s door lies in

Fışk va fajúr va ’aşıyán.

See chap. v. couplet 168.

Strive with abstinence and fear of God, and truth, and  
purity ;

But add not to the merit of the Chosen One (Muhammad).

<sup>90</sup> Desire not whiteness (purity) beyond limit,  
Saying :—It is disgusting ; what room for blackness ?

Of wise men speech remains a token ;  
Of Sa'dí, remember this one word :—

“ The sinner, God-fearing  
“ Is better than the saint, devotion-displaying.”

---

A certain lawyer of tattered garment, of straitened hand,  
Sate down in the foremost ranks, in the hall of the Kází.

The Kází very sharply glanced at him ;  
The officer of the court seized his sleeve, saying :—“ Rise !

<sup>95</sup> “ Knowst thou not, that thy place is not the highest !  
“ Sit lower, or go, or stand.”

“ Not every one is worthy of the chief-place ;  
“ Munificence is in grace ; and rank, in worth.

---

<sup>89</sup> In Šúff-ism, “ zuhd ” signifies—berún ámadan az dunyá. Make not  
pride thy occupation ; consider not excess lawful ; preserve limit (mode-  
ration) in every matter.

The Prophet—with all his devotion and purity, and power of pro-  
phesying, and message-bringing, and sublime rank—chose humility ;  
put not his foot beyond limit, in any matter ; and confessed to the  
defect of his devotion.

<sup>90</sup> Whenever, beyond limit, whiteness increases, it is disgusting, and  
resembles disease.

In every matter, to pass beyond limit and not to preserve bounds, is  
indecorous ; nay, it brings loss upon the face of the work.

When some of the “ Companions ” exercised asceticism, Muḥammad  
forbade their going deeply in devotion.

"What need to thee of anyone's advice ?

"This very shame is to thee sufficient torture.

"Every one, who sate, with honour, lower down,

"Falls not with contempt from above to below.

"Exercise not boldness, in the place of the great ;

"Display not lionishness, when thou hast not the power of  
grasp." *Imp.*

100 When that wise one of darvesh complexion saw  
That his fortune sate down and rose up to battle,

A sigh, like fire, came forth from the helpless one ;  
Than the place where he was, he sate lower down.

The lawyers prepared the path of strife ;  
They hurled—the "not," and "I do not agree."

They opened together the door of contest ;  
Neck made long with—"not ; and—" yes."

Thou wouldst have said—the courageous cocks are in  
battle ;  
Entangled, they fell on each other with beak and claw.

105 This one, from anger beside himself, like one intoxicated ;  
That one, beating both his hands on the ground.

They fell into a difficulty, exceedingly intricate ;  
In the solution of which, they could find no path.

The one of tattered garment, in the lowest ranks,  
Entered the contest, with force, like a roaring lion.

He said :—"Oh chiefs of the law of the Prophet !  
"With the traditions, and revelations (of the Kurán), and  
law, and the principles of Islám,

"Proofs, strong and real, are necessary ; *Y. Imp.*  
"Not, the veins of the neck (swelling) in hot altercation."

110 "To me, also are the chaugán (bat) of sport and ball."  
They said:—"If thou knowst well, speak."

Then he, who sate at the knee of respect,  
Opened his tongue, and closed their mouths.

With the reed of eloquence of description, which he pos-  
sessed,  
He pourtrayed on their hearts, like the picture of a ring-  
stone:

Drew his head from the street of simile to reality;  
Drew the pen upon the head of the letter of (effaced) the  
claim.

On every side, they shouted;—"Afrín! Afrín!"  
Saying:—"On thy wisdom and genius, a thousand  
praises!"

115 The dun horse of speech, he urged so far,  
That the Kází, ass-like, remained behind in the mire.

He came forth from his robe and turban;  
He sent them, with reverence and courtesy, to the one,  
garment-tattered.

Saying:—"Alas! I recognised not thy worth;  
"I was not engaged in thanks for thy auspicious arrival.

"With so great a capital of eloquence, I grieve,  
"That I behold thee, in such a rank (the lowest)."

The officer of the court came, with cordiality, to him,  
That he might place the turban of the (Kází) on his head.

120 "With hand and tongue, he forbade him saying:—"Be it  
far from me!  
"Place not, on my head, the foot-link of pride.



“ For, to-morrow, towards those wearing old garments  
(the poor),

“ Heavy will my head become with the turban of fifty  
yards.

“ When they call me Maula and chief magistrate,  
“ Men will appear contemptible in my eyes.

“ Is drinking-water ever different,  
“ If its vessel be golden, or earthen ?

“ Wisdom and brain, within man's head, are necessary ;  
“ For me, like thee, a beautiful turban is unnecessary.

125 “ A person is not of worth, through head-greatness ;  
“ The gourd of great head is even without a kernel.

“ Exalt not the neck with turban and beard :  
“ For, the turban is cotton ; and, the moustache, dry  
herbage.

“ Those who, in form (only) are man-like,  
“ Best indeed it is, that they be silent, picture-like.

“ To the extent of one's skill, it is proper to seek dignity :  
“ Make not, Saturn-like, loftiness and misfortune.

“ Great is the greatness of the mat-reed,  
“ In which, indeed, is the intrinsic quality of the sugar-  
reed.

130 “ With this (deficient) wisdom, and spirit,—I call thee no  
one,  
“ Even if a hundred slaves go behind thee.

121 In future my head will be for the poor full of awe ; and they will  
appear to me contemptible

123 The student should note the idiom of the original in the first line.

Even so are the Lords of Eloquence, in every garment and condition ;  
difference, in their perfection and greatness, occurs not.

“ How well said the small shell in the clay,  
 “ When an ignorant one, full of avarice, took it up,—

“ No one will purchase me for any thing ;  
 “ Wind me not, in foolishness, in silk (like a jewel).

“ A beetle has that very worth which is its,  
 “ Even if it sate amidst tulips.

“ The rich man is not, by property, better than a person ;  
 “ If the ass puts on satin-housings,—he is an ass.” *Y. 9. 12.*

135 In this way, the sensible man (the lawyer), speech-uttering,  
 Washed malice, with the water of speech, from the heart.

The speech of one heart-troubled is hard ;  
 When thy enemy falls, display not sluggishness.

When power reaches thee, pluck out the enemy's brain ;  
 For, the opportunity washes down the dust (of grief) from  
 the heart.

The Kází remained captive to his own violence, in such a  
 way  
 That he said :—“ This is indeed a disastrous day ! ”

Through astonishment, he bit his hands, with his teeth ;  
 His eyes, like the two stars near the pole, remained fixed  
 on him.

140 And thence, the young man turned the face of resolution ;  
 He went out, and no one again found his trace.

Clamour arose from the chiefs of the assembly,  
 “ Say, whence is one of such a bold eye ? ”

133 It is said that when a beetle perceives the perfume of the rose,—it dies.  
 “ Ja'l ” signifies—sargín, ghalatang.

135 The first line may otherwise be rendered :—  
 In this way, the man, speech-uttering, quickly.

A herald went from the front, and ran in every direction,  
Saying:—"Who saw a man of this description and appearance?"

One said;—"Of this kind of sweet speech,  
"We know, in this city, Sa'di; and him only."

"On him be a hundred thousand blessings that he thus  
spoke; *V. G. J. P.*  
"The bitter truth—behold! how sweetly he uttered it."

145 There was in the town of Ganja,—one king-born,  
Who was unclean and tyrannical—may it be far from  
thee!—

Singing and intoxicated, he entered a masjid,  
Wine in his head, and bumper-glass in hand.

In a cell, a devotee was dwelling,  
One, tongue-entangling (in truth); and, heart-pure (as to  
malice).

Some persons for his talking, assembled.  
—When thou art not learned, be not less than the  
hearer.—

When that refractory steed (the prince) exercised disrespectfulness,  
Those dear ones (the assembly) became desolate of heart.

150 When the foot of the prince is wicked,  
Who is able to express a breath concerning the well-known  
order?

144 In the 'Ik̄d-i-manẓūm, couplets 145–201 are omitted.

150 When the Prince places his foot on forbidden things.

Garlic overpowers the rose-perfume ;  
The sound of the harp becomes weak, through the drum.

If the prohibiting of forbidden things comes from thy  
hand,  
It is not proper to sit like one, handless and footless.

And if thou hast not the hand of power, speak ;  
For, the disposition becomes pure by admonition.

When as to both hand and tongue, power is not,  
Men show manliness by prayer. *W. J. B.*

155 One (of the hearers) before the sage, sitting in solitude,  
Lamented and wept, head on the earth,

Saying :—" On this intoxicated rascal (the prince) once,  
" Pray ; for we are tongueless and handless.

" A single ardent breath (sigh) from a thoughtful heart,  
" Is stronger than seventy swords and axes."

The one, world-experienced, stretched forth his hand ;  
What said he ? " Oh Lord of high and low !

" Through fortune, this youth,—his time is happy ;  
" Oh God ! keep all his time happy."

160 A person said to him :—" Oh exemplar of rectitude !  
" Why desirest thou for goodness for this wretch ?

" When thou desirest good for the faithless,  
" What ill desirest thou on the citizens ? "

151 Even so, legal orders become not current over one who is entangled in  
forbidden things—*fisk wa fajúr.*

155 See couplet 147.

The one beholding with quick intelligence thus spoke :—

“ When thou findest not the secret of my speech, agitate not :

“ We adorned not the assembly with raving nonsense ;

“ We desired his repentance from the justice of the Creator.

“ For every one, who returns from bad ways,

“ Reaches eternal ease in Paradise.

165 “ This pleasure of wine is indeed for five days ;

“ In abandoning it,—perpetual pleasures.”

This matter, which the man, speech-making (the recluse),  
uttered,

One out of that assembly unfolded to the prince.

From rapture, water, cloud-like, came to his eyes ;

A torrent of sorrow rained on his face.

His heart burned with the fires of desire ;

Shame sewed his eyes to the back of his feet.

To the one of good appearance (the recluse) he sent a person,  
Knocking at the door of repentance, saying :—“ Oh grievance-redresser !

70 “ Be pleased to come, that I may lay down my head (at  
thy feet) ;

“ That I may put aside ignorance and non-rectitude.”

The adviser (the recluse) came to the prince's court ;

He glanced into the hall of the court.

He saw sugar, and jujube, and candle, and wine ;

The assembly prosperous with wealth ; but, the men intoxicated.

---

72 Sugar and jujube here stand for—the lip of a mistress.  
Candle here signifies—joking.

This one unconscious of himself; that one half-drunk;  
Another poetry-spouting, wine-flagon in hand.

On one side, the minstrel's cry raised;  
On the other, the cup-bearer's voice saying :—" Drink ! "

175 The companions, with wine of red colour intoxicated,  
Through sleep, the head of the harper on his bosom, harp-  
like.

Of the boon-companions, neck-exalting, there was not  
An eye of any open there, save the narcissus.

The drum and harp consonant with each other;  
The flute, from the midst, brought forth a lament.

He (the recluse) ordered: they shattered (the drum and  
harp) into small pieces;  
That pure pleasure became changed to dregs.

They broke the harp and snapped the string;  
The speaker put singing out of his head.

180 They struck a stone on the wine-vessel, in the wine-house,  
They placed the wine-vessel (before them), and struck off  
its neck.

The wine of red colour from the flagon, head-lowered,  
Ran as blood from a slain duck.

The jar was pregnant nine months with wine:  
In that calamity (of birth), it quickly cast out the daughter  
(of grapes).

They rent the belly of the leathern (wine) bag to its navel,  
The blood eyes of the cup, over it, full of tears.

---

183 In some copies—the eyes of the cup, over it, bloody with tears.

He ordered :—the stone of the court-yard of the building,  
They plucked up, and put anew in its place.

185 For, the rosy colour of the wine of ruby hue  
Departed not, by washing, from the marble surface.

It is not wonderful if the sink become intoxicated,  
When, it drank, on that day, so much wine.

Whosoever used again to take the harp in his hand,  
Used to endure pushing (beating) of his head, drum-like,  
at men's hands.

And, if a worthless fellow had taken a harp on his neck,  
He would have rubbed his ear, guitar-like.

The young man (the prince), head-intoxicated with pride  
and conceit,  
Sate, like old men, in the corner of devotion.

190 {The father had, many times, spoken vehemently to him,  
Saying :—“Be of decent gait, and of pure speech.”}

He endured his father's violence, and prison, and restraint,  
It was not so useful to him, as counsel.

If the gentle-speaker (the recluse) had spoken severely to  
him,  
Saying :—“Put youthfulness, and ignorance out of thy  
head.”

Imagination and pride would have prevailed over him,  
That he would not have left the darvesh (the speaker) alive.

The roaring lion, through fighting, casts not away the  
shield (surrenders not);  
The panther thinks not of the cutting sword.

195 One can, with gentleness, flay the enemy's skin;  
When thou exercisest severity towards a friend, he is an  
enemy.

No one made a hard face, anvil-like,  
Who suffered not the chastising hammer on his head.

Exercise not vehemence, in speaking to an amír ;  
Pursue gentleness, when thou seest that he practises  
severity.

Make thyself, by manners, concordant, with whomsoever  
thou mayst see,  
Whether he be inferior, or superior.

For this one (the superior) may draw back his neck from  
pride ;  
And, that one may, by thy pleasant speech, draw his head  
within thy noose.

200 One can, by sweet speech, carry away the ball (of power) ;  
But one of bad disposition, constantly, endures bitterness.

Take thou, from Sa'dí, the pleasant speech ;  
To the one of bitter visage, say :—" Die of bitterness ! "

---

One of sugar-laughter sold honey,  
From whose sweetness, hearts become consumed.

A sweet one, waist-girt, sugar-cane like,  
The purchasers about her more (numerous) than the flies.

If, for instance, she should have taken up poison,  
They would have devoured it like honey from her hand.

205 One of hard life glanced at her work ;  
He bore envy, in respect to her market-day.

He went, the next day, running around the world ;  
Honey in his hand ; vinegar (ill-temper) on his eye-brow.

Wandered much, before and behind, clamour-making,  
But, not a fly sate on his honey.



At night-time, when money came not to his hand,  
He sate, with straitened heart, face to the corner.

Like a sinner, face embittered with (God's) threatening;  
Like the eyebrows of prisoners on a day of festival.

- 210 A woman sportively said to her husband :—  
“ The honey of one of bitter visage is bitter.”

A bad temper takes a man to hell;  
Those of good temper only see Paradise,

Go; drink warm water from the brink of the rivulet;  
Drink not the cool draught of one of bitter face.

It was forbidden thee to taste the bread of that one,  
Who drew together his eye-brows table-cloth-like.

Sir! put not on thyself difficult work;  
For the one of bad temper is of reversed fortune.

- 215 I assume—that to thee, there is neither silver, nor gold;  
To thee, the tongue also is not sweet, like Sa'di's.

---

I have heard that of a learned man, God-worshipping,—  
His collar, a drunken knave seized.

From that one of black heart, the man of pure heart  
Suffered head-pushing, but raised not his head from  
tranquillity.

At length, one said to him :—“ Art thou not also a man?  
“ Endurance, in respect to this indiscreet one, is a pity.”

The man of pure disposition heard this speech;  
He said to him :—“ Speak not again to me in this way.

---

- 220 " The ignorant drunken one rends a man's collar :—  
 " Who meditates (practises) conflict with a lion-claw ?  
 " It befits not the learned one, that his hand,  
 " He should fix in the collar of the drunken, ignorant one.  
 " The skilful one possesses life in this way :—  
 " He suffers violence ; and exercises kindness."
- 

The foot of one desert-sitting, a certain dog bit  
 With such anger, that poison dropped from his teeth.

At night, through pain, helpless, sleep took him not ;  
 There was, in his party, a little daughter.

- 225 She used violence to her father, and displayed severity,  
 Saying :—" Hast thou, also, indeed no teeth ?"

After weeping, the man of distressed days  
 Laughed, saying :—" Oh little mother, heart-illuminating !

" Although, to me—are power and poison,  
 " I am loth (to use) my jaws and teeth.

" It is impossible, even if I endure a sword blow on my  
 head,  
 " That I should plunge my teeth within the leg of a dog.

" As to dogs, the nature is evil ;  
 " But, (doggishness) comes not from man."

---

- 230 There was a certain great one, skilful in the world ;  
 His slave was of depraved qualities.
-

Through this filthy one, hair dishevelled,  
He used to be as one vinegar-rubbed on the face.

Like a large male serpent, his teeth stained with poison ;  
From the ugly ones of the city, pledge taken.

Continually on his face, the water of a diseased eye  
Used to run, as the smell of onion (issued) from his armpit.

At cooking-time, he used to express a frown on his eye-  
brow ;  
When they had cooked, he used to strike knee (in sitting)  
with his master.

235 Time to time, for bread-eating, his fellow-sitter ;  
But if he (the master) had died, he would not have given  
water to his hand.

Neither speaking nor the blows of a stick used to exercise  
effect on him ;  
Night and day, the house was in a state of being mined  
(ruined) by him.

Sometimes, he used to throw thorns and chips on the road ;  
Sometimes, he used to fling the hens into the well.

From his aspect, great terror used to arise ;  
He used not to go to a work, from which he used to return.

A person said :—" Of this slave of bad qualities,  
" What desirest thou, —manners, or skill, or beauty ?" *V. Imp.*

231 The second line may otherwise be rendered :—

An evil one: one with vinegar rubbed on his face.

232 The ugly ones had pledged their ugliness to him, so that he possessed  
the sum total of ugliness in the city.

"Az kase girau burdan" signifies—ba kase sábiḡa kardan ; taḡad-  
dum namúdan ; az kase rih̄n sitándan.

234 Observe the phrase—ba kase zánú zadan.

236 "Kand o kob" signifies—digging and knocking ; tashwísh wa bezárf.

240 " A person, with this unpleasantness, is not worth (so much),

" That thou shouldst approve of his violence, and endure his torment.

" A slave,—good and of correct walk of life, I

" Will bring to thy hand; take away this to the captive-seller.

" And, if he brings thee the smallest coin, turn not away thy head;

" He is dear at any price,—if thou wishest the truth."

The man of good disposition heard this speech;

He laughed, saying :—" Oh friend of auspicious family !

" As to this boy—his nature and disposition are bad; but,

" By him, my nature becomes good nature.

245 " When I shall have endured much from him,

" I may be able to endure the violence of everyone."

Endurance appears, at first, to thee, like poison;

But when it grows in the disposition, it becomes honey.

---

No one sought the road to the ancient shaikh Ma'rúf of Karkh,

Who placed not, first, his own renown, out of his head.

I heard that a certain one came a guest to him;

From his sickness to death little remained.

Head cast as to its hair; and face, as to its purity (of complexion);

The soul clinging, by a single hair, to his body.

---

247 Ma'rúf Kirkhí was one of the ancient shaikhs; he died A.H. 200. His grave is at Baghdád, of which Kirkh was a quarter. People go in pilgrimage to his tomb to utter prayers.

250 At night, he cast himself down there, and put his pillow;  
Forthwith, he placed his hands—in clamour, and lament.

Nights, one moment, neither used sleep to seize him;  
Nor (was there) sleep to anyone, by reason of his lament.

A disturbed nature, and rough disposition;  
He died not; but slew a people by his altercation.

From his clamour, and lamenting, and sleeping, and  
rising,—  
People took the path of flight from him.

Of the men-inmates of that abode, a person (was not);  
There remained—the powerless one, and Ma'rúf only.

255 I have heard that, many nights, on account of service,  
Ma'rúf slept not;  
Like men, he bound his waist; and did whatever he said.

One night, sleep brought an army to his (Ma'rúf's) head;  
—How much power may the non-sleeping man exercise?—

In a moment, when his eyes began to sleep,  
The distressed traveller began to speak,

Saying:—"May there be a curse on this impure race (of  
darveshes),  
"Who are (seekers of) name and fame; but, are fraud  
and wind:

"Filthy believers, purity-wearing;  
"Deceivers, piety-selling.

260 "How knows the glutton, sleep-intoxicated,  
"That a helpless one closed not his eyes?"

---

260 "lat-ambán" signifies—*harís* va pur *khwár* va *bisiyár* *khwár* va *shikam-parast*.

He uttered unlawful words to Ma'rúf,  
Saying:—"Why slept he careless of him, one moment?"

The shaikh, from generosity, endured this matter;  
The concealed ones of the haram (the women) heard.

One spoke secretly to Ma'rúf.  
Saying:—"Heardst thou what the lamenting darvesh  
said?"

"Oh shaikh! go; after this, say:—take thy own way;  
"Take away reproach; die in another place.

265 "Goodness and mercy are in their own places;  
"But, generosity to the bad is evil. *Yāshar*

"Place not a round pillow for the head of the mean;  
"The head of the man-injurer (is) best against a stone.

"Oh one of good fortune! exercise not goodness to the  
bad;  
"For, (only) the fool places the tree in the salt soil.

"I say not—Take no care of a man,  
"But waste not generosity on such as are not men.

"Act not, with qualities of softness towards the rough;  
"For, they rub not the dog's back, like the cat.

270 "If thou desirest justice, the dog, right-recognising,  
"Is better, in character, than the man ungrateful.

"Use not mercy, with ice-water, towards the mean;  
"When thou dost,—write the compensation for it on ice.

"I beheld not such a crafty person; *Yāshar*  
"Show not mercy to this worthless one."

---

266 The second line means:—It is proper to beat his head on a stone.

270 "Ba yakh nawishtan" signifies—kár-i-tahâsil va be sabât kardan.

When the lady of the palace (Ma'rúf's wife) uttered this reproach,

A cry issued from the good man's heart,

Saying :—"Return, and sleep tranquil of heart ;

"Be not distressed, as to this distressed one, because he thus spoke.

275 "If, from indisposition, he shouted at me,

"The unpleasant speech from him came pleasantly to my ear.

"It is proper to listen to the tale of violence of such a one,

"Who, from restlessness, cannot slumber."

When thou seest thyself of strong state and happy,  
Endure, thankfully, the burden of the feeble.

If thou art, indeed, a mere semblance, tilism-like,  
Thou wilt die ; and, thy name, like thy body, will die ;

But if thou causest thyself to cherish the tree of liberality,  
Thou mayst, assuredly, enjoy the fruit of good name.

280 Seest thou not that, in Karkh, the tombs are many ?  
The tomb of Ma'rúf only is known.

The man pomp-worshipping displays pride ;  
He knows not that grandeur is in gentleness.

An impudent one preferred his desire (in beggary) to a pious one,  
There was not, at that time, a single acquired thing (money) in his girdle.

His girdle and hands were void and clean (empty) ;  
Otherwise, he would have scattered gold on his face, dust-like.

The beggar, malignant of face, hastened out ;  
In the street, he began to reproach him,

285 Saying :—" Beware of these silent scorpions ;  
 " Panther-renders, wool-clad.

" For, they place the knee against the heart, cat-like ;  
 " But, if a prey chances, they leap up, dog-like.

" The shop of fraud to the masjid brought, *4mp.*  
 " For, one can seldom find game in a house.

" Lion-men attack the káraván ;  
 " But, these (Súfís) pluck off the garment of men.

" White and black pieces (of cloth) stitched together ;  
 " Capital put together : gold gathered.

290 " Oh excellent ! barley-sellers, wheat-exhibiting ;  
 " World-wanderers, night-mendicants, harvest-beggars.

" Look not at their devotion, saying :—" They are old and  
 lazy ;  
 " For, in dancing (rapture) and ecstasy, they are young  
 and vigorous.

" Why is it necessary to make prayers from a state of  
 posture,  
 " When they can leap up to dance ?

" They are the staff of Músa, much-devouring ;  
 " Outwardly—so yellow of face, and emaciated.

291 See chap. iii.

293 When his holiness Músa went to Far'ún, and invited him to join his  
 faith, he displayed apparent miracles. Far'ún said, " This is all sorcery  
 and magic ; I also can summon my own sorcerers ; let us contend  
 together ; whichever is superior, truth is on his side." Músa consented.  
 When the magicians were assembled, they displayed their magic. Músa  
 feared. But, a revelation from the Glorious One came to him : " Oh,  
 Músa ! fear not, but cast thy staff on the ground." When the staff left  
 his hand, lo ! it became snake-like, and immediately swallowed their  
 sorceries.

Músa's rod, by swallowing, became not fat ; the same is the case with  
 these men.



“ They are neither abstinent, nor learned ;

“ This, indeed, is enough—that they purchase the world  
with religion.

295 “ On their body, they put a coarse cloak like that of  
Bilál ;

“ With the produce of Abyssinia, they make garments  
for women.

“ Of the precepts of Muhammad, thou seest in them no  
sign,

“ Save the former sleep (in the afternoon), and the morn-  
ing bread.

“ The belly up to the head, they have filled tight with  
morsels ;

“ Like the palm-leaf basket of beggary of seventy colours.

“ Beyond this, I will not speak on this matter ;

“ For, it is a sin to speak of one’s own walk of life.”

The impudent speaker spoke of this habit (of the Súfís) ;  
The eye, fault-finding, sees not skill.

300 One who has made many dishonoured,  
What care has he of anyone’s reputation ?

A disciple related this speech to the shaikh ;  
—If thou wishst the truth, he did not wisely.

An evil one behind me spoke of my defect, and slept ;  
Worse than he,—the friend, who brought (the tale) and  
uttered it.

295 Bilál, an Abyssinian of black colour, was the crier who announced to  
the people when Muhammad prayed.

296 “ Nán-i-sihr ” signifies—something which Muslims eat at the close of  
the night, during the Ramzán.

301 From the second line of 301 to couplet 304 is uttered by the author.

A certain one cast an arrow, and it fell on the road ;  
It injured not my existence, and gave me no wound.

Thou didst take it up and come to me ;  
Didst strike it violently into my loins.—

305 The pious one of good disposition laughed,  
Saying :—“ This is easy, say—utter a more difficult matter  
than this.

“ Yet what he said ill of me is little ;  
“ It is one, out of a hundred of those bad deeds I know.

“ These that he, through suspicion, attributed to me ;  
“ I, on my part, truly know that they are so.

“ He joined his society with us this year ;  
“ What knows he of the defects of my seventy years ?

“ In the world, better than I, a person, my own defect,  
“ Knows not,—save the Knower of my secret (God).

310 “ I have not seen one of such good intention,  
“ Who considered my defect was this, and no more.

“ At the place of assembling, if he be the evidence of my  
sin,  
“ I fear not hell ; for, my work is good.

“ If my enemy speaks ill of me,  
“ Come and say :—‘ Take away the draft (of my defect)  
from before me.’ ”

Those have been men of the path of God,  
Who have been the butt of the arrow of calamity.

They threw off (from the head) the hat of pride ;  
They exalted the head with the crown of eminence.

315 Be submissive, while they rend thy skin ;  
For the pious endure the burden of the impudent.

If, of the dust of men, they make a pitcher ;  
Those reproach-making will break it with a stone.

---

King Sálîh of the kings of Syria  
Used to come out early in the morning with his slave.

He used to wander in the quarters of the bázár and streets,  
After the manner of an Arab,—a veil bound about his face.

For, he was possessed of discernment, and was the poor  
man's friend ;  
Whosoever has these two qualities,—he is King Sálîh.

320 He discovered two darveshes sleeping in a masjid ;  
He found them distressed of heart, and heart disturbed.

In the night, through cold, sleep had not taken their eyes ;  
Thinking of the sun, lizard-like.

One of those two was speaking to the other,  
Saying :—" Even, on the day of the place of assembling,  
there is justice.

" If these kings, neck-exalting,  
" Who are in sport and pastime, and possessed of desire  
and consequential airs,

" Enter Paradise with those distressed,  
" I will not raise my head from the brick of the grave.

325 " Lofty Paradise is our country and abode ;  
" For, to-day, the fetter of grief is about our feet.

---

322 Only, in this world, there is no justice.

“ During thy whole life-time, what pleasure didst thou  
experience from them,

“ That thou shouldst, in the next world, also endure their  
trouble ?

“ If Sálìh there, by the garden-wall,

“ Enters, I will rend his brain with my shoe.”

When the man uttered this speech, and Sálìh heard it,  
He considered it not wisdom to be (standing) longer there.

A moment passed, when the fountain of the sun,  
Washed down sleep from the eyes of the people.

330 Running, he sent for the two men, and called them ;  
In pomp, he sate ; and, in dignity, caused them to sit.

He rained on them the rain of liberality ;  
He washed down, from their bodies, the dust of contempt.

After distress through cold, and rain, and torrent,  
They sate with those renowned of the tribe :

Two beggars, night made day, garmentless,  
Perfuming their garments over the aloe-burner.

One of them spoke privately to the king,  
Saying :—“ Oh king ! the world a ring in the ear (a slave)  
to thy order ;

335 Those approved of God attain greatness ;  
In us two slaves, what appeared pleasing to thee ?

The monarch expanded from joy, rose-like ;  
He laughed, in the face of the darvesh, and said :—

“ I am not such a one that, from pride of retinue,  
“ I contract my face, at those helpless.

---

330 “Dawán yá rawán ” signifies—zúd, quickly.  
See couplet 250.

" Put thou also as to me the malignant disposition, out of thy head :

" Lest thou shouldst, in Paradise, display discordance.

" I opened, to-day, the door of peace ;

" Shut not, to-morrow, the door on my face.

340 " If thou art an accepter of the true path, choose a path like this ;

" When power reaches thee, take the hand of the darvesh.

" That one took not away the fruit (of pardon) of the Túba tree,

" Who sowed not, to-day, the seed of desire (of good deeds).

" Thou hast not desire, — seek not happiness ;

" With the chaugán of service, one can carry off the ball (of empire)." *Qutb*

To thee, how is there effulgence (of love) lamp-like,  
Since, thou art full of thyself, as a lamp with water.

That existence gives light to the assembly,  
Whose burning in the bosom is candle-like.

345 A certain one had a little skill in astronomy ;  
But, he possessed a head, intoxicated with pride.

From the far road, he came to Koshyár,  
—A heart full of desire ; a head, full of pride.—

The sage used to sew up (close) his eyes from him,  
He used not to teach him a single letter.

343 In the East, men fill a glass with water and put in it oil and a wick.  
This sort of lamp gives but little light.

346 Koshyár was the name of a sage of Gílán.

When portionless, he resolved to return,  
The sage, neck-exalting, said to him :—

“ Thou hast imagined thyself full of wisdom ;  
“ A vase that is full—how may it take more.

350 “ Thou art full of pretension ; on that account, thou goest  
empty from me :

“ Come empty ; so that thou mayst become full of truth.”

Sa'di-like, in the world,—of self-consciousness,  
Become void, and return full of the knowledge of God.

In anger, a slave turned his head from a king (fled) ;  
He ordered a person to seek ; no one found him.

When he (the slave) returned, in anger and rancour,  
He said to the swordsman :—“ Spill his blood ! ”

Thirsty for blood, the unkind executioner  
Drew forth a sword like a thirsty tongue.

355 I heard that, from his straitened heart, he said :—

“ Oh God ! I pardon him my blood,

“ Because, always in favour, and pleasure, and fame,  
“ I have, in his fortune, been a friend.

“ God forbid ! that, to-morrow (the Judgment Day), for  
my blood,

“ They should seize him, and his enemy become joyful (by  
his punishment).”

When his speech came to the king's ear,  
The cauldron of his wrath boiled no further.

352 “ Dar ” is superfluous.

In the 'Ikd-i-manzúm, couplets 352 to 363 are omitted.

356 “ Ikbál ” signifies—pesh ámadan ; rue áwardan bar chíze ; chíze pesh-i-kase dáshtan.

He gave (him) many kisses on his head and eyes ;  
 He became lord of the standard, and tambourine, and drum.

360 From such a frightful place, by softness,  
 He caused his fortune to attain that dignity.

The design of this tale is—that soft speech  
 Is like water on the fire of a fiery man.

Oh friend ! exercise humility to a stern enemy ;  
 For, gentleness makes blunt the cutting sword.

Seest thou not that, in the place of meeting of sword and  
 arrow,  
 They put on the garment of silk, a hundred-fold ?

---

From the desolate place of a holy man, ragged garment-  
 clad,  
 The baying of a dog came to a certain one's ear.

365 To his heart, he said :—" How is the baying of a dog  
 here ? "

He entered, saying :—" Where is the holy darvesh ? "

From before and behind, he saw not the trace of a dog ;  
 Save the pious man, he saw none other there.

Ashamed, he began to return ;  
 For, shame came to him to argue about the mystery.

From within, the holy man heard the foot-sound ;  
 He said :—" Ho ! why standst thou at the door ? Enter.

" Oh my resplendent eye ! thoughtst thou not,  
 " That, from here, a dog gave tongue ? I am the dog.

- 370 “ When I saw that He purchases helplessness,  
 “ I put out of my head—pride, and judgment, and wisdom.  
 “ I made much noise, dog-like, at His door ;  
 “ For, I beheld not many meaner than a dog.”

When thou desirest that thou mayst attain sublime rank,  
 Thou wilt attain to loftiness from the low place of  
 humility.

Those took the chief seat in this presence,  
 Who placed their own worth low.

When the torrent came with fear and haste,  
 It fell headlong, from height to depth.

- 375 When the dew fell—humble and feeble,  
 The sky carried it, with love, to the (lofty) red star  
 (Pleiades-following).

A number of the eloquent are of opinion,  
 That Hátim was deaf ; believe it not.

In the morning, there issued the buzzing of a fly,  
 Which fell into a spider's net.

All the spider's weakness and silence was deceit ;  
 The fly thought it sugar ; it was imprisonment.

From the desire of counsel, the shaikh glanced at the fly,  
 Saying :—“ Oh foot-bound in avarice ! be still.

- 380 “ Sugar and honey, and candy everywhere, are not ;  
 “ But nets and fetters, in the corners, are open.”

- 376 Hátim, son of 'Amwánu-e-ašamm, entitled 'Abdu-r-raḥman, belonged to the ancient Shaikhs of Khurásán of Balkh. He died in Baváshjard, in Balkh, in A.H. 287.

In the 'Ikd-i-manzúm, couplets 376 to 424 are omitted.



One of that clique of people of judgment said :—

“ Oh man of the way of God ! I hold it wonderful,

“ How thou didst perceive the fly’s noise,

“ When it came, to our ears, with difficulty !

“ Since thou art acquainted with the fly’s sound,

“ It is not proper, after this, to call thee deaf.”

Hátim, smiling, said to him :—“ Oh one of quick under-  
standing !

“ To be deaf is better than to be listening to foolish talk.

385 “ Those, who are with me in privacy,

“ Are defect-concealers and praise-scatterers.

“ When I hold concealed mean qualities,

“ Existence makes me weak ; (and) lust, vile.

“ I show myself as though I heard not,

“ Perhaps I may be free from the trouble (of bad qualities).

“ When fellow-sitters consider me deaf,

“ They utter whatever is good and bad of me.

“ If to hear evil is unpleasant to me,

“ I withdraw my skirt from bad conduct.”

390 Be not at the well (of egotism), with the cord of  
praise ; Imp.

Be deaf, like Hátim, and hear thy own defects.

He sought not happiness, and found not safety, Y. Imp.  
Who turned aside the neck from Sa’dí’s sayings.

Is a better adviser than this Sa’dí necessary to thee ?  
I know not what may chance to thee after him.

There was, in the limits of Tabríz, one dear to God,  
Who was always wakeful and night-rising (in devotion).

One night, he saw a place where a thief, a noose,  
Twisted and cast upon the side of a roof.

395 He informed the people, and raised a cry ;  
Men, from every side, arose with sticks.

When the unmanly thief heard the voice of men,  
He saw no place of existing, in the midst of the danger.

Through that tumult, fear came upon him ;  
Flight, in season, became his choice.

From pity, the devotee's heart became wax ;  
For, the helpless night-thief was disappointed.

In the darkness, he, from behind came to his front ;  
By another road, he returned in front of him,

400 Saying :—" Oh friend ! go not ; for I am a friend of thine ;  
" I am, in manliness, the dust of thy foot.

" I have seen no one, like thee, in manliness ;

" Since battle-action lies in two ways only ;

" One way is to come manfully before the enemy ;

" The second to carry one's life out of the contest (by flight).

" By these two qualities of thine, I am thy slave ;

" How art thou named ; for I am the slave of thy name ?

" If, by way of liberality, it be thy opinion ;

" I may guide thee to a place which I know.

405 " It is a house, small ; and the door fast shut ;  
" I think not the lord of the chattels is there.

" We may place two clods, one on the other ;

" We may put one foot on the shoulder of the other (to reach the roof).

“ Be satisfied with as much as falls to thy hand;  
 “ It is better, than that thou shouldst return empty of  
 hand.”

With cordiality, and flattery, and art,  
 He drew him (the thief) towards his own house.

The young night-traveller (the thief) held lowered his  
 back;  
 The lord of sense (the devotee) entered (the house), by his  
 shoulder.

410 Horse-housings, and turbans, and chattels which he had;  
 He put, from above, into his (the thief's) skirt.

And, thence he raised a shout, saying :—“ Thief!  
 “ Oh young men ! (there are) recompense, and aid, and  
 hire.”

The deceitful thief leaped out from the tumult,  
 Running, the garment of the devotee under his arm.

The man of good faith became comforted,  
 Saying :—“ The desire of the one head distracted became  
 accomplished.” *Done*

The filthy one, who pitied no one,—  
 The heart of a good man forgave.

415 From the mode of life of the intelligent, it is not won-  
 derful,  
 That they should, from magnanimity, do good to the bad.

---

411 The second line means :—  
 Assist me, for recompense and reward.

In the prosperity of the good, the bad live;  
Although, the bad are not people of goodness.

---

There was a pure heart, Sa'dí-like, to a certain one,  
Who had fallen in love with one of smooth face.

He used to endure violence from the enemy, harsh-speaking,  
Used to leap, ball-like, from the chaugán of hardship.

Used not to cast a frown, at any, on his eyebrows,  
Used not to relinquish gentleness for harshness.

420 One, at length, said to him :—" To thee is there no shame ?  
" Of all this slap-giving and stone-throwing,—is there no  
knowledge ?

" The mean make their own body fat ;  
" The feeble make endurance of the enemy.

" It is not proper to pass over the fault of an enemy,  
" Lest they say :—" He possessed neither power, nor man-  
liness." " *Y. fup.*

The distraught one, distracted of head, gave to him  
An answer, which it is fit to write in gold :—

" My heart is the house of the love of my friend only ;  
" For that reason, malice to no one is contained in it."

425 How well said Bahlúl of happy temperament,  
When he passed by a holy man, battle-seeking,—

---

417 " Ba kase dar uftádan " signifies—há kase 'áshik gashtan.

419 " Chín bar ábrú andákhtan " signifies—'abúsul-wajh gashtan.

425 Bahlúl was a saint, who feigned madness.

“ If this claimant had recognised the Friend (God),  
 “ He would not have engaged, in contest with the enemy.”

If he had possessed knowledge of the existence of God,  
 He would have considered all people non-existent.

---

I have heard that Lukmán was of black colour ;  
 Was neither tender, as to body ; nor, delicate, as to limb.

A certain one considered him his own slave ;  
 He was vile ; he kept him (engaged) on clay-work.

430 He experienced violence, and endured his tyranny and  
 anger ;  
 He prepared, in one year, a house for his sake.

When the runaway slave came back to him,  
 Of Lukmán, a great fear came over him.

He fell at his feet, and made apology ; *Y. Imp.*  
Lukmán laughed, saying :—“ What is the use of apology ?”

“ In a year, by thy violence, I make my liver blood ;  
 “ In a moment, how may I put grief out of my heart ?

“ But indeed I forgive thee, oh good man !  
 “ For, thy gain (by my service) made not my loss.

435 “ Thou didst make thy sleeping-chamber prosperous ;  
 “ For me,—skill and knowledge of God became greater.

---

426 Whoever is a holy man, God-recognising, and Friend (God) knowing,  
 regards no one as an enemy.

The claimant here means one claiming to be of the circle of holy  
 men.

428 Lukmán was a celebrated Greek philosopher. In the Kurán, God  
 says :—“ And, verily, I have given (power of) prophecy to Lukmán.”

434 “ Mára,” in place of “ mará,” is for respect.

“ Oh one of good fortune ! there is, among my followers, a  
slave,

“ Whom I oftentimes order difficult work.

“ Again I will not sorely vex his heart ;

“ When recollection comes to me of the severity of the  
clay-work.”

Whosoever endured not the violence of the great,  
His heart burned not for the poor weak folk.

If the word of rulers be hard to thee,  
Exercise not harshness towards thy inferiors.

---

440 I have heard that, in the desert of San'á, Juníd  
Saw a dog (by old age) the hunting-teeth dug out. \*

From the power of the grasp, lion-seizing,  
He had become weak, like an old fox.

After seizing, on foot, mountain-sheep and antelope,  
He used to suffer kicks from the sheep of the tribe of  
Hayy.

When he beheld it weak, powerless and wounded,  
He gave to it a half of his own provisions.

I heard that he said, while he wept blood :— *Imfa.*  
“ Who knows, which of us two is the better ? ”

445 “ To-day, in outward appearance, I am better than this  
dog ;

“ In the future, what (decree) may Fate urge against me ?

---

440 San'á is a town in the district of Yaman, in Arabia Felix.

Juníd was a well-known saint of Baghdád ; they say that originally  
he was of Nihávand ; his title was Abú-l-Kásim, and his nickname  
Kávarírí of Zajjaj, or Khazzár. He died in A.H. 287 or 289.

All Imáms are directly descended from him ; hence they call him  
Şayyidu-l-şá'ifa, “chief of the band.”

“ If the foot of my faith slips not from its place,  
 “ I may place the crown of God’s pardon on my head.

“ But if, on my body, the garment of holiness  
 “ Remain not, I am less by much than this dog.

“ For when the dog, with all its ill-repute, dies  
 “ They will not carry it to hell.”

Oh Sa’dí! this is the way—that men of the path of God  
 Looked not on themselves with honour.

450 They possessed honour above the angels, on that account,  
 That they regarded not themselves better than a dog.

---

A certain drunken one had a harp under his arm ;  
 He broke it, at night, on a devotee’s head.

When day came, that good gentle man  
 Carried a handful of silver to that one of stone-heart.

Saying:—“ Last night, thou wast proud and intoxicated ;  
 “ For thee and me, harp and head are broken.

“ As to me, that wound has become well, and fear has  
     risen (and departed) ;  
 “ As to thee, save by silver, the harp will not be sound.”

455 The friends of God are over heads (in power), on that  
     account,  
 • That they endure much on their heads.

---

I heard that, in the dust of Wakhsh, of the great,  
 There was one hidden, in the corner of retirement.

---

456 Wakhsh was a town in Badakhshán.  
 In the ‘Ikd-i-manzúm, couplets 456-501 are omitted.

“ Oh one of good fortune ! there is, among my followers, a  
slave,

“ Whom I oftentimes order difficult work.

“ Again I will not sorely vex his heart ;

“ When recollection comes to me of the severity of the  
clay-work.”

Whosoever endured not the violence of the great,  
His heart burned not for the poor weak folk.

If the word of rulers be hard to thee,  
Exercise not harshness towards thy inferiors.

440 I have heard that, in the desert of San'á, Juníd  
Saw a dog (by old age) the hunting-teeth dug out.

From the power of the grasp, lion-seizing,  
He had become weak, like an old fox.

After seizing, on foot, mountain-sheep and antelope,  
He used to suffer kicks from the sheep of the tribe of  
Hayy.

When he beheld it weak, powerless and wounded,  
He gave to it a half of his own provisions.

I heard that he said, while he wept blood :— *Amf.*  
“ Who knows, which of us two is the better ? ”

445 “ To-day, in outward appearance, I am better than this  
dog ;

“ In the future, what (decree) may Fate urge against me ?

440 San'á is a town in the district of Yaman, in Arabia Felix.

Juníd was a well-known saint of Baghdád, they say that originally  
he was of Nihávand ; his title was Abú-l-Kásim, and his nickname  
Kávaríri of Zajjaj, or Khazzár. He died in A.H. 287 or 289.

All Imáms are directly descended from him ; hence they call him  
Şayyidu-l-şá'ifa, “chief of the band.”



“ If the foot of my faith slips not from its place,  
 “ I may place the crown of God’s pardon on my head.

“ But if, on my body, the garment of holiness  
 “ Remain not, I am less by much than this dog.

“ For when the dog, with all its ill-repute, dies  
 “ They will not carry it to hell.”

Oh Sa’dí! this is the way—that men of the path of God  
 Looked not on themselves with honour.

450 They possessed honour above the angels, on that account,  
 That they regarded not themselves better than a dog.

---

A certain drunken one had a harp under his arm;  
 He broke it, at night, on a devotee’s head.

When day came, that good gentle man  
 Carried a handful of silver to that one of stone-heart.

Saying:—“ Last night, thou wast proud and intoxicated;  
 “ For thee and me, harp and head are broken.

“ As to me, that wound has become well, and fear has  
     risen (and departed);  
 “ As to thee, save by silver, the harp will not be sound.”

455 The friends of God are over heads (in power), on that  
     account,  
 That they endure much on their heads.

---

I heard that, in the dust of Wakhsh, of the great,  
 There was one hidden, in the corner of retirement.

---

456 Wakhsh was a town in Badakhshán.  
 In the ‘Ikḍ-i-manzúm, couplets 456–501 are omitted.

Naked in truth; not, by the religious garment, a holy one,  
Who puts out the hand of need (in beggary) to the  
people.

As to happiness,—the door opened towards him;  
The doors of others shut in his face.

An eloquent one, void of wisdom, endeavoured,  
Through impudence, to speak ill of that good man,

460 Saying :—" Beware of this deceit, and artifice, and fraud ;  
" Of sitting, demon-like, in the place of Sulaimán.

" From time to time, they (the Súfís) wash the face, cat-  
like,

" Lusting for the prey of the mice of the street.

" Austerity-enduring, for the sake of name and pride ;

" For, far goes the sound of the empty drum."

He kept talking, and the crowd about him a multitude,  
Man and woman, making fun of them (the devotee and the  
orator).

I heard that the sage of Wakhsh wept,  
Saying :—" Oh Lord ! forgive this Thy slave.

465 " Oh pure Lord ! if he spoke truth,  
" Give to me repentance, that I may not be destroyed.

457 He was not a hypocrite, who, by the religious dress, gained his liveli-  
hood.

460 The jinn Şahra having assumed the likeness of Sulaimán, and taken  
the finger-ring from a female slave, sate on Sulaimán's throne. In the  
end Aşaf bin Burkhya, Sulaimán's vazír, having discovered this, recited  
(for the purpose of revealing the secret) in his presence the book Zabúr.  
That accursed one, not having the power to hear the word of God, with-  
drew himself from the throne, and cast the ring into the sea, whence,  
in the belly of a fish, it returned to Sulaimán's hand. Ever after, bands  
of jinns and men, and beasts and birds were present, as of yore, in his  
court.

“ My fault-seeker was agreeable to me ;  
 “ For, he made known to me my bad disposition.”

If thou art that which an enemy says, grieve not ;  
 And, if thou art not, say :—“ Go, wind-weigher ! ”

If a fool called the musk fetid,  
 Be thou tranquil ; for, he uttered nonsense.

And, if this speech, as to the onion passes,  
 Say it is so ; display not a fetid (proud) brain.

470 The wise one of enlightened mind takes not  
 The mouth-stopper of the enemy (defect-revealing) from  
 the juggler.

It is not wisdom, and judgment, and understanding,  
 That a wise man should purchase deceit from a juggler.

Then the wise man sate behind his own work,  
 He shut against himself the enemy's tongue.

Be thou of good conduct, that the malevolent one  
 May not obtain the power of speaking to thy injury.

When from the enemy's speech, it comes hard to thee.  
 See ! what defect he takes up, that do not.

469 “ Ganda maghz ” signifies—takabbur kardan, hirza bar zabán rándan ; durushtí wa kaj khulk namúdan.

470 Since the hearing of faults from the enemy is the cause of amendment of the disposition, the sage takes no charm from the juggler for the stopping of men's mouths ; nay, he desires that the enemy should utter his faults.

Hangáma-gír is one who, in public places, utters tales so that men purchase his amulets.

“ Zabán-band ” signifies—a charm, with which they close an enemy's mouth, so that he is unable to slander.

“ Mush 'abid ” signifies—hukka-báz ; hangáma-gír

475 That person only knows good of me,  
Who reveals to me my faults.

---

A certain one brought a difficult matter before 'Alí;—  
Peradventure, he may make apparent to him the difficulty.

The chief, enemy-binding, territory-conquering,  
Gave to him an answer from the fountain of knowledge  
and judgment.

I heard that, in this assembly, a person  
Said:—"Oh Bú-l-Hasan! it is not so."

Haydar, name-seeking, on account of him, grieved not;  
He said:—"If thou knowst better than this, speak."

480 Whatever he knew, he spoke; and suitably spoke;  
It is improper to conceal the sun's fountain with clay.

The king of men approved of his answer,  
Saying:—"I was in error; and he, in truth."

"He spoke better than I; the Wise One is one only  
(God);—

"For, knowledge is not higher than His knowledge."

If, to-day, there had been a lord of rank,  
He would not, through his pride, have looked at him.

The chamberlain would have placed him out of court;  
They would, without reason, have beaten him.

485 Saying:—"Hereafter, make not one void of reputation;  
"Speech is improper before the great." Y. Gump

---

476 'Alí was the fourth Khalífa; he was called Bú-l-Hasan; Haydar i Sháh-i-Mardán.

One, in whose head, is conceit,—  
Think not, that he will ever listen to truth.

From his knowledge, comes sorrow; from admonition, dis-  
grace;  
The red tulips grow from rain, not from stone.

If thou hast the pearl of the river of excellence, rise;  
Scatter, in admonition, (pearls) at the feet of the darvesh.

Seest thou not that,—in the dust, fallen, wretched,—  
The rose grows, and the fresh spring blossoms?

490 In the eye of (wise) people, no one is of account,  
Who shows, in himself, much haughtiness.

Oh sage! scatter not sleeves of pearls (of eloquence),  
When thou beholdest a rich man, full of himself.

Speak not,—so that a thousand persons may utter thy  
praises;  
When thou speakst of thyself, expect not (praise) from  
any.

---

I heard that, in a narrow street, as regards a beggar,  
'Umar placed his own foot on the back of his foot.

The helpless poor man knew not who he was;  
For one aggrieved knows not enemy from friend.

495 He was enraged at him, saying:—"Perhaps, thou art  
blind?"

'Umar, the just chief, said to him:—

“ I am not blind ; the deed passed by mistake ;  
 “ I observed not ; pass over my fault ”

How just have been the great ones of religion.  
 Who have, with inferiors, been even so.

One sense-choosing is humble ; *V. Jam*  
 The branch full of fruit places its head on the earth.

Those humility-practising will, to-morrow, boast ;  
 The head of those neck-exalting will, in shame, be lowered.

500 If thou fearst the day of reckoning,  
 Forgive the fault of that one, who fears thee.

Exercise not malignant tyranny towards thy inferiors ;  
 For, there is a power even above thy power.

---

Of good conduct and good disposition, there was a certain  
 one,  
 Who was well-speaking of the bad.

When he passed (in death), a person beheld him in a dream  
 (and asked),  
 Saying :—“ Tell me of past events.”

He opened a mouth, rose-like, with laughter,  
 He gave utterance, nightingale-like, with a sweet sound,

505 Saying :—“ They used not much severity towards me ;  
 “ For I practised oppression against no one.”

---

I have recollection of this sort, that the (water-carrier) of  
 the Nile *V. Jam*  
 Prepared not, one year, water for Egypt.

---

A crowd went towards the mountains;  
Became, with supplication, suppliants for rain.

They wept; but, from their weeping, a running rivulet  
Came not, save the water of the eyes of women.

One from among them carried news to the Saint Zú-n-Nún,  
Saying:—"On the people there is much grief and suffering.

510 "Pray for those distressed;  
"For the word of those God-accepted is not rejected."

I heard that Zú-n-Nún fled to Madín;  
Much time passed not before rain fell.

After the lapse of twenty days, the news went to Madín,  
That the cloud of black heart had wept over them.

The old man made an immediate resolution of returning;  
For, by the spring-torrents, the water-pools became full.

A holy man secretly inquired of him,  
"What philosophy was there in this thy going away?"  
He replied.—

515 "I heard that for fowl, and ant, and rapacious beast,  
"There was scarcity of food, on account of the deeds of  
the wicked.

---

507 In a drought-year, men, by reason of excessive wretchedness, used to  
assemble in the mountains and deserts, and to beseech, with lamenta-  
tion, rain from God.

509 Zú-n-Nún was a saint, his name Subán Ibráhím, title, Abú-l-fazl;  
and nickname, Zú-n-Nún.

His father was Naubí of the wise ones of Kuresh; his spiritual guide,  
Isráfil, his teacher, Malik-i-Uns. He died in A.H. 245.

511 Madín is the name of a city, on a river of the west, of the tribe of  
Shu'aab (Jethro).

" In this country, I reflected much ;

" I considered no one worse than myself.

" I went, lest that, through my wickedness,

" God should fasten the door of liberahy on the people  
(of Egypt)."

Is greatness necessary to thee ? exercise courtesy ; for those  
great ones

Beheld not men worse than themselves, in the world.

Thou becomest precious before men, at that time,  
When thou reckonst thyself for nothing.

520 The great one, who reckoned himself among the small folk,  
Carried away greatness in this and in the future world.

From this dust-holder (the world), that slave went pure,  
Who, at the feet of the meanest person, became dust.

Ho ! thou who passest over our dust,  
By the dust of dear ones ! (let it be) that thou rememberst  
(me).

For if Sa'dí (after death) became dust—to him what  
sorrow ?  
Since he was, in life also, dust (humble).

In humbleness, he gave his body to the dust ;  
Although he went, wind-like, around the world.

525 Much time passes not before that the dust (of the grave)  
consumes him,  
The wind carries him, again, through the world.

522 " Illá aī kī " is a common form of address.  
The second line may mean :—

That thou rememberst me in auspicious prayer.

Or, That thou rememberst this speech, in couplet 523.

524 The second line refers to the fact that Sa'di was a great traveller.



Behold! since the rose-garden of truth blossomed,—  
No nightingale spoke in it, sweetly, like Sa'di.

If a nightingale should die in such a way, wonderful,—  
That a rose should not grow on its bones!

---

## CHAPTER V.

## ON RESIGNATION.

1 ONE night, I kept burning the olive-oil of reflection ;  
I lighted up the lamp of eloquence.

A foolish talker heard my speech,  
Save to say—To thee be praise !—he saw no way.

From villainy of nature, he also folded within it (the  
following),

—For, from pain of envy a cry involuntarily arises,—

Saying:—“ His thought is sublime, and his judgment  
lofty,

“ In this matter of the habit of abstinence, and regula-  
tions, and counsel.

5 “ Not, in regard to lance and mace and heavy club ;  
“ For, the conclusion of this matter is for others.”

Knows he not that to us there is no desire for battle ;  
Otherwise the power of speech is not scanty ?

I am able to draw forth the sword of the tongue ;  
To draw forth his existence, in a moment.

Come; so that, in this matter, we may wage war;  
(And) may make a stone-pillow for the enemy's head.

---

Happiness is in the gift of the Ruler (God);  
It is not in the grasp and arm of the strong. *V. 1. p.*

10. When the lofty sky gives not wealth, *V. 1. p.*  
It comes not, by manliness, into the snare.

Neither, through weakness, did distress come to the ant;  
Nor, by grasp of strength, did lions eat.

Since one cannot draw forth the hand against the sky,  
It is necessary to be content with its revolution.

If God has written for thee long life,  
Neither the snake, nor the sword, nor the arrow may  
\* injure thee.

And, if, as to thy life, a portion remains not,  
The electuary kills thee just as poison.

15 No; when Rustam experienced the end of his days,  
Shughdad brought forth the dust (of destruction) from  
his body.

---

In Sipahán, I had a certain friend,  
Who was warlike and fearless and shrewd.

---

13 "Gazáyad" comes from—gazáyídan, *not* from gazídan.

15 Shughád, Rustám's brother, threw Rustam, with his horse Rakhsh, into a well; he himself was slain by an arrow, which Rustam fired from the well. The Persians trace his descent from Mamún, son of Benjamin, son of Jacob.

Continually, his hand and dagger coloured with blood;  
The enemy's heart was, through him, like roast meat on  
the fire.

I beheld not the day, on which, he bound not (to his waist)  
the quiver;  
And fire leaped not from his steel arrow.

Courageous; strong, with the gripe of an ox,—  
Through fear of him, confusion fell upon lions.

20 He used to cast his arrow, with such precision,  
That he used to cast down an enemy with every arrow.

The thorn in the rose,—I saw not that it passed in such a  
way,  
As his arrow passed not into the shields.

He struck not the helmet of the one contest-seeking,  
Whose helmet and head, he shattered not completely.

In battle (enraged) like a sparrow on the locust day, \*  
In slaying,—whether a sparrow, or a man, to him what  
difference?

If it were to him, to attack Firídún,  
He would not have given him respite for sword-drawing.

25 Panthers, by the force of his gripe, beneath him;  
His fingers plunged in the brain of the lion.

He used to seize the girdle of one strength-tried,  
And if he had been a mountain, he would have plucked  
him from his place.

When he used to strike his battle-axe on the one mail-  
clad,  
It used to pass through the man, and strike his saddle.

---

19 "Gáv-zor" may signify—rude, violent, brutal.

20 "Da'wa" signifies—claim, but here it means precision.

23 On the swarming of locusts, the sparrow becomes demented; and, rushing in every direction, seizes every locust it can.

Neither as to unanimity, nor as to magnanimity,—to him,  
A second, no one saw a man in this world. } *Y. 10/12.*

He used not to allow me to go a moment from his hand  
(side);  
For, he used to have an inclination for those of true dis-  
position.

30 Suddenly, a journey snatched me from that soil;  
For, in that abode, there was no food for me.

Fate transported me from Media to Syria;  
In that pure dust, my abode was happy.

In short, some time, I became resident;  
In sorrow and in ease; in hope, and in fear.

Of Syria, my cup again became full;  
The desire of my house drew me.

By chance it so fell,  
That my path again fell by Media.

35 One night, my head became lowered in thought;  
That skilled one (of Ispahán) passed to my heart.

The salt (of desire) made fresh my ancient wound;  
For, I was one who had eaten salt from the man's hand.

For seeing him, I went towards Sipáhán;  
In love of him, I became a seeker and inquirer.

I beheld the young man old from time's revolution;  
His poplar arrow (of stature) a bow; his deep red colour  
(complexion) yellow.

---

31 “'Irák-1-'Ajam” signifies—Media; “'Irák-1-'Arab” signifies—  
Chaldea; “'Shám-1-'Arab” signifies—Syria.

34 The student should note the use of “uftádan,” in this couplet.

36 “Namak” here signifies—ishtiyák.

38 Arghaván is a tree of deep red colour.

Zarír is a yellow grass with which they dye garments.

His head, from snow-hair, like a white mountain;  
 Water, from the snow of old age, running on his face.

40 Heaven obtained the hand of power over him;  
 It twisted the tip of his manly hand.

The world put pride out of his head;  
 The head of powerlessness on his knees.

I said to him:—"Oh chief, lion-seizing!  
 "What made thee withered like an old fox?"

He laughed, saying:—"From the day of battle with the  
 Tátárs,

"I put out of my head that battle-seeking.

"I beheld the ground, with spears, like a cane-brake,  
 "The (coloured) standards, fir-like, set in it.

45 "I raised the dust of battle, like smoke;  
 "When there is not the power,—of what use is ardour?

"I am that one who when I used to attack,  
 "Used to carry off, with a spear, a ring from the hand.

"But, when my star displayed not assistance;  
 "They gat themselves about me like a ring.

"I reckoned the way of flight gain;  
 "For (only) the fool makes a sharp tussle with Fate.

"How may helmet and cuirass render me aid,  
 "When my bright star displayed not assistance?

50 "When victory's key is not in the hand,  
 "One cannot break victory's door, by the arm.

---

48 "Panja tez kardan" signifies—mukábila kardan, 'koftan-i-panja ba tezi va shitáb zadagí.

“ A crowd, panther-overthrowing, and of elephant-strength,  
 “ Man’s head (the rider) and horse’s hoof (the ridden)—  
     in iron.

“ That very moment, when we saw the dust of the army,  
 “ We put on the mail-garment, and the helmet head-  
     piece :

“ Urged our Arab steeds, cloud-like ;  
 “ Showered down our gleaming arrows, rain-like.

“ From ambush, the two armies dashed together ;  
 “ Thou wouldst have said :—On the earth, they dashed  
     the sky.

55 “ From the raining of arrows, hail-like,  
 “ Death’s storm arose on every side.

“ For the chase of lions, conflict-making.  
“ The dragon-noose, mouth opened.

“ With blue dust, the earth became the sky ;  
 “ The flash of sword and helmet in it star-like.

“ When we overtook the enemy’s horsemen,  
 “ On foot, we wove shield within shield.

54 “ Baham bar zadan ” signifies—bar ham dígar rekhtan.  
 Through the display of bravery and assault, they rendered all things  
 topsy-turvy

58 “ Dar yáftan ” signifies—dar rasídan  
 “ Sıpar dar sıpar yáftem ” signifies—darmíyán-i-má va eshán parda  
 sákhtem.

In the second line, “ báftem ”—signifying “ muttaşıl va parwand kar-  
 dem ”—sometimes occurs.

When the enemy’s horsemen approached and the work of arrow and  
 musket was ended—of necessity, alighting from our horses, and placing  
 the shield in front, we were opposed to the enemy, who did even so.

On both sides, the armies commingled to such a degree that shield to  
 shield became conjoined.

" With arrow and spear, we split the hair ;

" When power was not,—we turned away.

60 " What force does the grasp of man's exertion bring,

" When the arm of God's grace assists not ?

" The sword of those malice-bearing was not blunt ;

" But there was malice, on the part of the angry star.

" A person of our army, forth from the conflict,

" Came not—save with a *khaftán* bedabbled with blood.

" Within the silken vest, went not the arrow of those

" Of whom, I said :—They may sew (pierce) the anvil  
with an arrow.

" Like a hundred grains, clustered in an ear of corn,

" We fell,—each grain in a corner.

65 " With unmanliness, we became dispersed ;

" Like the fish, which, cuirass-clad, falls to the fish-hook.

~~" When Fortune, from towards us, was face on the turn ;~~

~~" The shield before the arrow of destiny was—nothing."~~

---

In Ardabíl, a certain one of iron grasp

Caused, continually, the double-headed arrow to pass  
through a spade.

One felt-clad came before him in battle,

A young man, world-consuming, battle-making,

---

65 " *Az ham dast dâdan* " signifies—*azyak dîgar gashtan* ; *hazîmat khurdan* ; *pareshân shudan*.

" *Shist* " signifies—*kullâb*, a fish-hook.

67 Ardabíl is a city in *Âzar bîjân*, in Persia ; it is said to have been founded by *Fîrûz*, *Naushîravân's* grandfather.



Contest-seeking, like Bahram-Gor,  
On his shoulder, a noose of the raw hide of the wild ass.

- 70 When he of Ardabíl saw the one felt-wearing,  
He brought the string to the bow, and the string to the  
ear.

He struck him with fifty poplar arrows;  
But; nòt a single arrow passed beyond the felt.

The warrior came like the hero <sup>\*</sup>Dastán,  
He brought him (of Ardabíl) within the curl (of his noose),  
and took him away.

In the camp, at the tent-door, his hand,  
He bound to his neck—like bloody thieves.

In the night, from anger and shame, he slept not;  
In the morning, a slave-girl, from the tent said:—

- 75 “ Since thou piercest iron with the arrow and dart,  
“ How didst thou fall a captive to one felt-wearing? ”

I heard that he said, while he wept blood:—

“ Knowst thou not that no one lives on the day of death? ”

“ I am that one, who,—in the act of spear-piercing and  
sword-striking,  
“ Teach Rustam the manner of battle.

“ When the arm of my fortune was of strong state,  
“ The thickness of the spade appeared to me as felt.

“ Now, that fortune is not in my grasp,  
“ The felt is not less than the spade, before my arrow.

---

69 Bahrám Gor was a king of Persia, who was fond of hunting wild asses. He was Naushírván's grandson.

80 " On the day of death, the spear rends the cuirass ;  
 " It passes not beyond the shirt of one deathless.

" He, in whose rear is the sword of the wrath of death,  
 " Is naked,—if his cuirass be manifold.

" But, if Fortune be his friend ; and, Time supporter—  
 " It is impossible to slay him naked—(even) with a large  
 knife.

" Neither did the sage, carry away (save) his life, by  
 effort ;

" Nor, did the fool die, by improper eating."

---

One night, a hero slept not on account of a side-pain ;  
 There was a physician, in that quarter ; he said :—

8 " Since, he eats the vine-leaf in this fashion,  
 " I have wonder if he will finish the night (alive).

" For, the blade of the Tátár arrow in the chest,  
 " Is better than wine-sweetmeats of improper food.

" If by a single morsel, griping occurs in the bowels,  
 " All the life of the ignorant one comes to naught."

By chance, the physician died that night ;  
 Forty years have passed since this time ; but the hero is  
 alive.

---

As to a certain villager,—his ass fell (and died) ;  
 On a vine-tendril, he placed its head flag-fashion.

---

89 " 'Alam kardan " signifies—dar áwekhtan, to suspend.

For driving away the evil eye, they used to suspend the head of an  
 ox, or an ass.

90 An old man, world-experienced, passed by it ;  
To the vineyard-keeper, laughing, he thus spoke —

“ Oh soul of father ! think not that this ass

“ Repels the evil eye, from the sown field.

“ For, from its own head and buttocks,—this ass, the re-  
pelling (of blows)

“ Effected not, so that, feeble and wounded, it died.”

What knows the physician of trouble-removing from a  
person,

When helpless, he himself will die of trouble !

---

I have heard that, from an indigent person, a *dínár*  
Fell ; and that the wretched one sought for it much.

95 At length, he turned away the head of despair ;  
Another, without searching, found it.

For bad and good fortune, the pen,  
The Fates urge ;—we, yet, in the womb.

By strength of grasp, they enjoy not their daily food ;  
For those of strong grip are more straitened in circum-  
stance.

An old man struck his son with a stick ; *Y. Zup.*  
He said :—“ Oh father ! I am guiltless ; strike not.”

“ For men’s violence against thee, it is possible to weep ;  
“ But, when thou displayst violence, to me what remedy is  
there ? ”

---

99 It is right to complain to God, but not of God.

100 Oh lord of sense! cry to the Ruler (God),  
Raise not a cry, on account of the Ruler.

One of lofty star,—his name Bakht-yár,—  
Was of great power, and possessed of capital

In that place, to him were both gold and property;  
Others poor of reversed fortune.

His house was in the street of the beggars;  
His gold was like wheat in the measure.

When the darvesh beholds the rich one in affluence,  
His heart burns the more by the stain of indigence.

105 A woman joined battle with her husband,  
When, in the night-time, he went to her empty-handed,

Saying:—"There is no one, unfortunate, poor, like thee;  
"Thou hast only this sting, like the red wasp.

"Learn manliness from the neighbours;  
"For I am not, in short, a harlot picked up on the road."

"Persons have gold, and silver, and territory, and household goods,

"Why art thou not of good fortune, like them?"

The one of pure heart, wool-clad, raised  
A shout from the heart, drum-like,

110 Saying.—"I possess not the hand of power, as to anything;

"Writhe not in the grasp of the hand of Fate.

104 After "tawágar" read "rá."

106 The red wasp has a sting but no honey; so thou hast the power of doing injury, not of good.

“ In my hand they placed not power,  
 “ That I might make myself fortunate ”

In the dust of Kísh, a certain poor man,—  
 How well he said to his ugly partner (wife),—

“ When the hand of Fate created thee ugly of face,  
 “ Plaster not the rose-colour (rouge) on thy ugly face.”

Who acquires good fortune, by force ?  
 Who makes the blind man's eye seeing, by antimony ?

115 A good deed comes not from those of bad stock,  
 Needle-work is impossible to dogs.

All the philosophers of Greece and Róm } Imp.  
(Know not how to make honey from the thorny tree. }

It happens not that, from a wild beast, a man becomes ;  
Education, (even) with exertion, is lost on it. V. Imp.

One can make clean the mirror from blight ;  
 But, the mirror comes not from a stone.

The flower grows not from the willow-bough, by effort ;  
 The Ethiopian becomes not white, by the hot bath.

120 When the poplar-arrow of destiny is not repelled,  
For the slave,—there is no shield, save resignation.

A vulture to a kite thus spoke,  
Saying :—“ There is no one more far-seeing than myself.”

112 Kísh is the name of a city in an island in the sea of Hurmuz.

115 The disposition of dogs is to rend, not to put together, as in sewing.

121 “ Zaghán ” signifies—gosht-rabá ; ghalíváj.

“ Kargis ” signifies—nasr

The kite replied:—"It is not proper to pass by this matter ;

"Come ; so that thou mayst look at the quarters of the desert."

I heard that, to the extent of one day's march,  
The vulture viewed from height to depth.

Thus, he spoke :—"I saw, if belief be to thee,  
"Where a grain of wheat is on the plain."

125 From astonishment, patience remained not to the kite,  
From sublimity, they turned to profundity.

When the vulture came close to the grain,  
A long foot-tether became knotted on him.

From his devouring that grain, the vulture knew not  
That adverse fortune would cast a snare about his neck.

Not every oyster is pregnant with the pearl ; *Inf.*  
Not every time does the expert archer hit the butt.

The kite said :—"From seeing this grain, what profit,  
"When to thee, there was not the beholding of the  
enemy's snare ?"

130 I heard that, he, neck in the noose, said :—  
"Caution, as to destiny, is unprofitable."

When death brought forth the hand for his blood,  
Fate bound his eyes, finely-discerning

In that water (of eternity), whose shore is unknown,  
The swimmer's pride is of no avail

How well said the apprentice of the embroidery-weaver,  
When he pourtrayed 'Anká, and elephant, and giraffe :—

122 "Dar" belongs to "guzashtan."

“ From my hand, there came not a form,  
 “ The plan of which, the Teacher from above pourtrayed  
 not.”

135 If the form of thy state be bad, or good,  
 The hand of Fate is its painter.

There is a kind of concealed hypocrisy in this,  
 Namely—“ Zaid injured me, or 'Umar wounded me.”

If the Lord of Command gives thee the eye,  
 Thou seest not again the form of Zaid and 'Umar.

I think not—if a slave rests (from seeking food),  
 That God draws his pen on (stops) his daily food.

May the World-Creator give thee the means of opening  
(the door) !  
For, if He shuts, none can open.

---

140 A young camel, to its mother, said :—  
 “ After travelling, at last, sleep awhile.”

She said :—“ If the rein had been in my hand  
“ No one would have seen me a load-carrier in the camel-  
string.”

There, where it wishes, Fate takes the vessel,  
 Although, the captain rends the garment on his body.

Oh Sa'di ! place not thy eye (of expectation) on anyone's  
 power ;  
 For Omnipotence only is the Giver.

---

136 Man's vision should be such that he should see the signs of God, not  
 those of an abject creature.

If thou worshipst God, of (people's) doors, sufficient for thee ;

But if He drives thee away, no one desires thee.

145 If God makes thee a crown-possessor,—raise thy head ;  
But, if not, scratch the head of despair.

Worship, with sincerity of intention, is good ;  
Otherwise, what comes from the husk, without kernel ?

What,—the idolater's cord on thy waist ? what, the religious garment ?

If thou putst them on for the opinion of the people.

I said to thee :—Display not thy own manliness ;  
When thou displayst manliness, be not an hermaphrodite.

It is proper to display (religious qualities) to the extent of thy capacity ;

Shame overpowered not him, who had not displayed.

150 For, when they draw the borrowed garment from off thy head,

The old robe will remain on thy body.

If thou art small, fasten not on wooden feet,  
That thou mayst, in children's eyes, appear tall.

And, if copper be silver-plated,     *impr*  
One can expend it on the ignorant.

Oh my life ! place not the gold-water on the valueless coin ;  
For the wise banker takes it as nothing.

They take the things gold-washed to the fire ;  
Then, it appears which are copper, and which gold.

---

144 The first line means—that people, to whose doors thou goest in beggary, will give thee alms.

148 See chapter iv. couplet 84.



155 Knowst thou not what the old man of the mountain said,  
To the man, who, for reputation, slept not at night?

“ Oh soul of father! go; strive for sincerity;  
“ For, from the people, thou canst not establish any  
(proof).”

Those persons, who have approved of thy acts,  
Have yet only seen thy outward form.

What price, does the Khurdís slave fetch,  
Who has leprous limbs beneath the over-coat?

It is impossible to enter Paradise, with imposture,  
For, the shroud goes back (on the Judgment Day) from  
thy ugly face.

160 I have heard that a certain one of immature age kept a  
fast,  
With a hundred difficulties, he accomplished one day up to  
the mid-day meal.

The tutor took him not that day to school;  
Devotion, on the part of a little boy, appeared to him  
great.

The father kissed his eyes; and, the mother his head;  
They scattered almonds and gold on his head.

When a half of the day passed over him,  
From his stomach's fire, the burning (of hunger) fell upon  
him.

156. “Az *khalk* bar bastan” signifies—az *khalk* naf’ giriftan.

160 “*Sáik*” comes from “*suk*,” signifying—*ádab-ámoz*; *utálík*.

“*Sábiq*” signifies—*sabak* dihandá; *khalífa*, e *maktab*.

To his heart, he said:—"If I eat a few morsels,  
"How may my father and mother know of the secret  
(deed)?"

165 When the boy's face was towards his father and family,  
He secretly ate; but openly carried on the fast.

Who knows, whether thou art in the bonds of God;  
If thou standst unwashed, in prayer?

Then, this old man is more ignorant than that child,  
Who, for the sake of men, is in devotion.

The key of hell's door is that prayer,  
Which thou, in men's eyes, makest long.

If, except to God, thy way goes,—  
They spread thy prayer-carpet in hell.

170 One of black deeds fell from a ladder;  
I heard that, even in a breath, he gave his soul (to God).

For some days, the son took to weeping;  
Took, again, to sitting with his companions:

Beheld, in a dream, his father; and inquired after his  
state,  
Saying:—"How escapedst thou from the assembling, and  
reviving, and questioning?"

He said:—"Oh son! desire not news concerning me;  
"From the ladder, I fell into hell."

- 166 "Wuzú" signifies—in law, the washing of the face, hands, feet, and  
anointing of the head
- 168 See chapter iv. couplet 81.
- 169 If thou performst devotion to be seen of men.

One of good walk of life, outwardly unceremonious,  
(Is) better than one of good fame, inwardly evil.

175 In my opinion, the night-going highway-man  
Is better than the adulterer of chaste skirt.

~~One trouble-enduring at the people's door,—  
What reward will God give him on the Resurrection Day?~~

Oh son! expect not reward from 'Umar,  
When thou art, at work, in the house of Zaid.

I say not:—he can reach his Friend (God),  
In this path; save that one, whose face is turned towards  
Him.

Go the right way, that thou mayst reach the stage,  
(Oh hypocrite!) thou art not on the path; for this reason,  
thou art lagging.

180 Like the ox, whose eyes the oil-presser binds up,  
Though running till the night,—at night, even there where  
it is.

The person, who turns away his face from the altar,  
The people of eloquence give evidence as to his infidelity.

Thou also art, in prayer, back to the Kibla,  
If thy face of supplication be not towards God.

~~That tree, whose root is firm, *X. Imp.*  
Cherish—that one day it may give thee the fruit of fruit.~~

If the root of sincerity be not in thy soil,  
No one is disappointed like thee, at this door (of God).

179 The one, who is a hypocrite, does much, but makes no progress. How,  
then, can he reach the stage?  
180 The ox is always circling.

185 Whosoever casts seed on the rock-surface,  
At the time of in-come, not a grain comes to his grasp.

Put not honour upon the reputation of (acquired by)  
hypocrisy;  
For, this (hypocrisy) has mire beneath the (lustrous) water.

When thou art, in secret, bad and dust-like,  
What profit,—the water of hypocrisy on the surface of the  
work?

On the surface of hypocrisy, it is easy to stitch the reli-  
gious garment,  
If thou canst sell it to God.

How may men know who is in the religious habit?  
The writer knows what is in the register (of deeds).

190 What weight may the leathern bag, full of wind, show in  
the place ~~where~~  
Where there is the (scale of justice, and the (book of equity?))

The hypocrite, who showed so much austerity,  
They see there is nothing in his leathern bag.

They make the outside of the coat cleaner than the lining;  
For, this is behind a veil, and that before the sight.

The great possessed indifference as to men's eyes,  
For that reason, they possessed a painted silk lining.

If thou wishst renown spread abroad in the country,  
Place the cloak outside; say :—Fill the interior with cotton.

187 "Námús" here signifies—riyá, hypocrisy.

190 A hypocrite's work is compared to a bag full of wind.

193 They are clothed with good deeds; because they desire not renown.

194 "Hulla" signifies—azár; radá.

The second line means :—

Cause thy exterior to be decked with hypocrisy.

195 Báyizíd uttered not, in sport, this speech :—

“ I am safer from the disbeliever, than from the disciple.”

Those, who are sultáns and monarchs,  
Are altogether beggars at this Court (of God).

The man of truth fixes not his desire (of help) upon the  
beggar ;

It is improper to take the hand of the fallen.

This indeed is best,—if thou be pregnant with a jewel,  
That thou shouldst take thy head within thyself,—oyster-  
like.

When the face of thy adoring is towards God,  
If Jibrá'il see thee not,—it is proper.

200 Oh son ! Sa'dí's counsel is enough for thee,  
If thou hearst it, like a father's counsel.

If, to-day, thou hearst not my word,  
God forbid ! that, to-morrow, thou shouldst be abashed.

~~Than this (Sa'dí) is a better adviser necessary to thee ?  
I know not what may chance to thee, after me.~~

195 The disbeliever tells me of my ill-doing, but the disciple, of my well-doing.

197 The beggar is described in couplet 196.

202 See chapter iv. couplet 392.

## CHAPTER VI.

## ON CONTENTMENT.

1 He knew not God and worshipped not,  
 Who displayed not contentment with his fortune and daily  
 food. *Y. Gulp*

Contentment makes a man rich;  
 —Inform the greedy one, world-travelling.—

Oh one without permanence! bring tranquillity to thy  
 hand.

For, vegetation grows not on the rolling stone.

If thou art a man of judgment and sense, cherish not thy  
 body;

For, when thou cherishst it,—thou slayst it.

5 Wise men are skill-cherishers;  
 But body-cherishers are feeble in skill.

Eating and sleeping is the way of beasts alone;  
 To be in this way is the habit of the unwise. *Y. Gulp*

That one attended to a manly life,  
 Who silenced first the dog of lust.

Happy that fortunate one, who, in a corner,  
Gathers to his hand road-provisions of the knowledge of  
God.

Those, to whom God's mystery became revealed,  
Preferred not the false to it

- 10 But, when he knows not darkness from light,  
Whether the sight of a demon, or the cheek of a húrí—to  
him what difference?

Thou didst cast thyself into a well, on that account,  
That thou didst not recognise the well from the road.

How may the young hawk fly to the zenith of the sky,  
When, in its long feathers, the stone of desire is bound?

If from lust's claw, thy skirt free,  
Thou shouldst make, thou wouldst go to the lotus-tree  
(in Paradise).

By eating less food than one's custom,  
One can make the body of angelic temperament.

- 15 How may the brutal lion reach the angel state?  
It cannot fly from earth to sky.

Practise first the human temperament;  
Think after that of the angelic temperament.

Thou art on the flanks of a refractory colt;  
Take care that it twist not its head from thy order.

For, if it should tear the halter from thy hand,—  
It would slay thy body, and spill thy blood.

If thou art a man, eat food within limit;  
Such a fully belly!—art thou a man, or a jar?

---

10 The demon (of falsehood) and the "húrí" (of truth) are alike to him.

20 Within the body, is a place for food, and reflection on God,  
and breath;  
Thou thinkst it is for bread only.

In the wallet of lust, where is remembrance of God con-  
tained?

With difficulty, he breathes,—leg extended.

The body-cherishers have no knowledge,  
That—the full stomach is void of wisdom.

The two eyes and stomach became not filled with any-  
thing;

These howels, coil on coil, are best empty.

Like hell which they fill with fuel,

Again, there is a shout, saying :—“Is there any more?”

25 Thy 'Īsa (the soul) continually dies of weakness;  
 Thou art in that desire, that thou mayst cherish thy ass  
 (the body)

Oh one of little worth! buy not the world, in exchange  
for religion; { M. 2nd }  
Purchase not thou the ass with the gospel of 'Īsa.

Perhaps, thou seest not that as to rapacious and non-  
 rapacious animals,

Only the greed of eating casts into the snare.

The panther, which stretches its neck (in pride) among  
 the beasts.

Falls, mouse-like, into the snare, through the greed of  
 eating.

Mouse-like, whose bread and cheese thou eatst,  
Into his snare, thou fallst and sufferst his arrow.

---

24 This occurs in the Sūra of Káf in the Kurán.



30

\*

\*

\*

\*

\*

\*

If food be delicious, or if it be simple,  
When delay occurs to thy hand, thou eatst pleasantly.

- 35 The sage places his head on the pillow at that time when,  
Sleep takes him, with violence, into its net.

So long as thou obtainst not the power of speech,—speak  
not;

When thou seest not the plain (of power), beware of the  
hall (of speech).

Speak not; and, so long as thou canst, plant not thy foot  
Outside of limit, or inside of limit.

---

Go; acquire a pure heart;  
The belly will not become full, save with the dust of the  
grave.

A Hájí gave me an ivory comb,  
Saying :—" May the mercy of God be on the good quali-  
ties of pilgrims !"

- 40 I heard that once upon a time he had called me a dog,  
For his heart was, in some way, dejected about me.

I threw away the comb, saying :—" This bone,  
" Is unnecessary for me ; another time, call me not a dog.

- " Think not, if I swallow my own vinegar,  
" That I will endure the violence of the lord of sweet-  
meats."

Oh soul ! be content with a little  
That thou mayst consider the sultán and darvesh as one.

---

30 In the 'Ikḍ-i-manzúm, couplets 30 to 37 are omitted.  
For obvious reasons, couplets 30 to 33 are here omitted.

Why goest thou before the king, with entreaty?  
 When thou placest avarice aside, thou art a king.

45 And, if thou art a self-worshipper, make the belly a  
 drum;  
 Make the door of this and that (man)—a Kibla.

And, if every moment, thy lust says :—give,  
 It causes thee to wander, village to village, in beggary.

Oh man of sense ; contentment exalts the head ;  
 The head full of avarice comes not forth from the shoulder.

---

A certain one, possessed of avarice, before King Khwárazm,  
 —I heard—went early in the morning.

When he saw Khwárazm, he became doubled and straight ;  
 He rubbed his face, moreover, on the earth ; and arose.

50 His son said :—“ Oh little fathēr, name-seeking !  
 “ I ask of thee a difficulty ; explain it.

“ Didst thou not say, that the dust of Hijáz was thy  
 Kibla ?

“ Why didst thou, to-day, pray in this direction (towards  
 the king) ? ”

Display not devotion to the lust of the lust-worshipper ;  
 Since, it has, every hour, another Kibla.

Avarice spilled the reputation of honour ;  
 It poured out a skirt (full) of pearls for two barley-grains.

When thou wishst to become satiated with the rivulet-  
 water,  
 Why spillst thou face-water (honour) for the sake of ice ?

---

47 For, every moment, he is bowing in humility (rukú') ; and, in sub-  
 mission (khuzú').

55 Perhaps, thou art a patient one as to happiness; *V. G. J.*  
 But if not, thou art, of necessity, (begging) at doors.

Sir! go; make short the hand of avarice;  
 What need to thee of the long sleeve (of beggary)?

Of him, who folded up the casket of avarice,  
 It is unnecessary to write—"Slave or servant to any one."

Expectation will drive thee from every assembly,  
 Drive it from thyself, so that no one may drive thee.

---

To one of the holy men, a fever came,  
 A person said:—"Ask for sugar from such a one."

60 He said:—"Oh son! the bitterness of my dying  
 "Is better than my bearing the oppression of one of  
 - bitter face."

The wise man ate not sugar from the hand of that one,  
 Who, through arrogance, made his face vinegar (bitter)  
 towards him.

Go not, in pursuit of whatever thy heart desires  
 For the strengthening of the body diminishes the soul's  
 light.

Imperious lust makes a man contemptible;  
 If thou art wise, hold it not dear.

If thou enjoyst whatever may be thy wish, *J. G. J.*  
 Thou wilt endure much disappointment from the revolu-  
 tion of time.

---

55 Oh, covetous one! exercise patience as to affluence; and moderate  
 thy desire. *J. G. J.*

65 To heat constantly the oven of the belly  
May, in the day of want, be a misfortune.

In straitened circumstances, thy face causes not its complexion to be shed  
If, in the time of plenteousness, thou makst the belly tight.

The man, full-devourer, endures the belly-load;  
And, if he obtain not food, he endures the grief-load.

Thou mayst often see the belly-slave greatly ashamed,  
In my opinion, the belly straitened is better than the heart (straitened).

Alas! thou art one man-born, full of dignity,  
Who is like the beasts—"Nay; they are lost!"

70 Show not pity to the ox of great weight;  
For, it is a great sleeper, and great devourer.

If fatness, ox-like, be necessary to thee,  
Submit thy body, ass-like, to the tyranny of persons.

---

Knowst thou what wonderful thing I brought from Basra?  
—A tale, which is sweeter than the green date.

We—a few individuals in the religious garb of the true (Súfís)—  
Passed by the side of a date-garden.

One amongst us was a stomach-barn (a glutton);  
He was, through this narrow-eyedness, a belly-enjoyer.

---

68 The belly straitened, by want of food, is better than the heart straitened by not obtaining its desire.

69 The second line comes from the Súra A'ráf of the Kúrán.  
In the 'Ikḍ-i-manẓúm, couplets 69 to 71 are omitted.

72 Basra is a town near the Persian gulf; it is sometimes called Balsora.  
See Lane's Arabian Nights Entertainments.

75 The wretched one bound his loins, and ascended the (date)  
tree;

And, thence fell heavily headlong.

The Ra, is of the village came, saying :—" Who slew this  
man ? "

I said :—" Express not against us a harsh word.

" The belly drew his skirt down from the branch."

—The one of narrow heart is of capacious bowels.—

Not every time, can one eat the date and carry it away ;  
The stomach-barn (the glutton) suffered a bad end, and  
died.

The belly is the hand-fetter, and foot-chain ;  
A belly-slave rarely worships God.

80 The locust is assuredly altogether belly ;  
The ant of small belly drags the locust by the foot.

---

A certain one had sugar-cane, on a small plate,—  
A wanderer, left and right, for a purchaser.

In a corner of the village, to a pious man, he spoke,  
Saying :—" Take ; and pay, when thou hast the means."

That wise man of adorned disposition uttered  
An answer, that should be written on the eye.

" Perhaps, to thee, patience (as to payment) may not be  
(exercised) towards me ;

" But, to me, (patience) is, as to the sugar-cane."

---

77 " Rúdán " is a word of the same character as—rozgárán ; bahárán.

78 " Lat-ambán " signifies—lat-nabáz ; lat nabar.

80 The belly extends from the locust's neck to its hinder extremity.

85 Sugar, in its reed, has no sweetness,  
When, behind it, is the bitter demand (for its price).

---

To one of the men of illumined mind,  
 The Amír of Khután gave a piece of silk cloth.

He expanded, through gladness, like the laughing rose-  
 leaf ;  
 Kissed his hands ; clothed himself ; and said :—

“ How good is the garment of honour of the King of  
 Khután !

“ But, my own religious garment is more beautiful than it.”

If thou art noble, sleep on the earth ; for, it is enough :  
 Perform no one's ground-kiss (in obeisance) for a costly  
 carpet.

---

90 A certain one had no bread-food, save an onion ;  
He had no resources and means, like others. *Imp.*

One said to him :—“ Oh one of foolish time !

“ Go ; bring something cooked from the tray of plunder  
 (the king's table).

“ Oh sir ! ask, and have fear of none ;

“ For the one ashamed is cut as to his victuals.”

He bound about him his over-coat, and quickly folded his  
 hand (sleeve) ;

They rent his coat, and broke his hand.

---

86 Khután is a country in Turkistán, near Khatá, or Tartary.

90 “Nán-khurish” signifies—the condiments eaten with bread. See  
 couplet 95.

I have heard that he said, while he wept blood :—  
“ What is the remedy for the deed done by one’s self !

- 95 “ The captive of avarice is one calamity-seeking,  
“ After this—I and my house; bread and onion (are  
enough).”

The barley-loaf, which I eat by the power of my arm,  
Is better than flour (twice sifted) on the tray of people of  
liberality.

Last night, how heart-straitened slept that worthless one,  
Who kept the ear (of expectation) upon the Kibla of  
others !

---

In an old woman’s house, there was a certain cat,  
Which was of reversed fortune, and of bad state.

It went running to the amír’s guest-house,  
The slaves of the sultán struck it with arrows.

- 100 It ran, blood dropping from its bones (wounds),  
While from fear of life it ran, it kept saying :—

“ If I escape from the hand of this arrow-caster,  
“ I and the mouse, and the old woman’s desolate abode  
(are enough).”

Oh my soul ! honey is not worth the sting’s wound ;  
Contentment with one’s own syrup of dates is best.

The Lord God is not satisfied with that slave,  
Who is not content with his Lord’s portion.

---

A certain child had cut its teeth,  
The father was head-lowered in reflection,

5 Saying :—" Whence may I bring bread food for him ?  
 " It is not manliness to abandon him."

When helpless, he uttered this speech to his partner (his wife),  
 Behold how like a man she spoke to him !

" Suffer not fear of Iblís, until he surrenders life (to God).  
 " That same Person, who gives teeth, gives bread." *V. 4m/2*

The Lord of Days (God) is, in short, able  
 To cause daily food to arrive ; vex not thyself so much.

He is the Pourtrayer of the boy within the womb ;  
 He is also the Writer (Computer) of its age, and daily food.

110 That lord, who bought a slave,  
 Maintains him. How much more God, who created the slave !

To thee, there is not that reliance on the Omnipotent,—  
 As to the slave, on his lord.

I heard that, in ancient times,  
 A stone used, in the hands of the pious, to become silver.

Thou thinkst not this speech is unreasonable ?—  
When thou becomest content, silver and stone are alike to thee.

107 In the Kúrán :—

"Through fear of want, kill not thy children ; we give thee and them daily food."

109 "Navísanda" here signifies—*andáza kunanda*.

112 "Abdál" (*sing. badl*) signifies—religious men, for whose sake God preserves the world ; they are, in number, seventy. Of these, forty are in Syria, and the remainder elsewhere.



When the child has a heart free from avarice,  
In its mind, whether a handful of gold, or dust, what  
difference ?

- 115 Give news to the darvesh, sultán-worshipping,  
Saying :—" The sultán is more wretched than the darvesh."

A diram of silver makes the beggar satiated ;  
Firídún, with the kingdom of Persia,—half satiated.

The guardianship of the country and of the empire is a  
calamity ;

The beggar is king, but his name is beggar.

The beggar, on whose heart is no desire,  
Is better than a king, who is unhappy (through dis-  
content).

The villager and his partner (wife) sleep pleasantly,  
With a pleasure, with which the sultán, in the palace,  
sleeps not.

- 120 If he be king ; or, if garment-stitcher,—  
When they sleep, the night of both becomes day.

And, if the torrent of death comes and takes both,  
Whether the sultán on the throne ; or the wanderer in the  
desert—what difference ?

When thou seest the rich man, head intoxicated with pride,  
Oh one of straitened hand ! go ; give thanks to God.

Praise be to God ! thou hast not those resources,  
That, by thy power, any one's injury may arise.

I have heard that a pious one, a good man,  
Made a house conformable to his stature.

125 One said :—" I know thy means (are such),  
 " That thou mayst construct a better house than this."  
 He replied :—" Enough.

" Why should I desire to raise a house above my head ?  
 " This indeed is enough, for the sake of leaving, (after  
 death)."

Oh slave ! make not a house in the path of the torrent (of  
 this world);

Because, for none did this edifice become complete.

Through knowledge of God, and wisdom, and judgment,—  
 it is not <sup>imp.</sup>  
 That one of a *karaván* constructs a house on the road (of  
 this world).

As to a certain one, empire-ruling, possessed of pomp,—  
 His sun (life) desired to descend to the mountain (in  
 death).

130 He left his territory to the shaikh of that place ;  
 For he had, in his house, no successor.

When the recluse heard the drum of empire,  
 He experienced not again pleasure in the corner of retire-  
 ment ;

He began to lead his army, left and right ;  
 Began to strengthen the heart of those hearty :

Became so strong of arm, and sharp of grip,  
 That he sought contest with those battle-seeking.

He killed a number of a scattered tribe ;  
 The rest assembled together, confederates and allies.

135 They drew him within a fence so tightly,  
 That he became distressed with the arrow and stone-  
 raining.

He sent a person to a good man,  
Saying:—"I am much distressed; come to my call for  
help.

" Assist by blessing; for, the sword and arrow  
" Are not a help in every battle."

When the 'ábid heard, he laughed and said:—  
" Why ate he not half a loaf, and slept? "

Kárún, wealth-worshipping, knew not,  
That the treasure of safety was in retirement.

---

140 The perfection (of existence) is the breath (spirit) of a  
gentle man, <sup>Amā.</sup>  
If he have not gold,—what loss or fear?

Think not,—if a mean one becomes rich,  
That his base disposition becomes changed.

But if the one liberality practising gets not bread,  
His nature may still be rich (generous).

Generosity is the soil; capital, the sown-field:  
Give,—that the root may not be destitute of a branch.

That God, who makes man from dust,—  
I have wonder if He makes lost humanity,

145 Seek not greatness, by gathering wealth;  
For, stagnant water makes an unpleasant smell.

Strive for liberality; for, the running water,  
Aid from heaven reaches with the flood.

---

144 It is inconceivable that God should ruin humanity, or that He should  
cause the source of liberality to disappear.

If a mean one fall from rank and fortune (or, be dismissed),  
He rarely again becomes erect (reinstated).

But, if thou art a precious jewel, have no care ;  
For, time causes thee not to be destroyed.

A clod—although it be fallen on the road,—  
Thou seest not that any one looks at it.

150 But, if a fragment of gold from the teeth (blade) of the  
scissors,  
Falls,—they will search again (and again) for it, with a  
candle.

They extract glass-ware from stone ;  
Where remains the mirror, beneath the blight ?

Skill, and religion, and excellence, and perfection,—are  
necessary ;  
For rank and wealth sometimes come ; sometimes depart.

From men of sweet discourse, I have heard,  
That, there was within the city (of Shíráz) a certain ancient  
old man ;

Much experienced as to kings, and the period of command ;  
A lifetime brought to an end from the era of 'Umar.

155 The ancient tree had fresh fruit (a son),  
Who kept, by his goodness (of beauty), the city full of  
noise.

151 They make the mirror clean and free from blight.  
153 In the 'Ik̄d-i-manẓúm, couplets 153 to 174 are omitted.

Wonder,—as to the (apple-like) chin of that one, heart-  
fascinating;  
For, there was never an apple on the cypress (of stature).

On account of his sauciness and lacerating of men,  
The old man found pleasure in shaving his head.

With an old razor, the age of small hope (the old man)  
Made his (the son's) head white, like the hand of Moses.

That one of iron heart (the old man), from the impetuosity  
which he had,  
Opened (his own) tongue, as to the defect of the one of  
Parí-cheek.

160 As to the razor, which made diminution of his beauty,  
Men placed, at once, its head in its belly.

The head of the one of beautiful countenance, from shame,  
harp-like,  
Lowered ; and, his hair fallen, in front, (on the ground).

As to a certain one,—in whom the heart had gone,—  
He was infatuated like his (the boy's) eyes, heart-binding.

A person said :—“Thou didst experience violence and  
pain ;  
“Wander not again in regard to a vain fancy.

“Turn away, moth-like, from love for the boy ;  
“For the scissors have extinguished the candle of his  
beauty.”

156 One has never seen an apple on the cypress. But, his stature was as  
a cypress ; and his chin, the apple on it.

158 “Músa, in the first line, signifies a razor ; in the second, Moses.

160 After shaving, men put the razor-blade into the razor-handle (its  
belly).

A commentator says that the second line may be rendered :—

“Men placed, at once, the loss of the beauty of his head, in secret,  
within their own belly.”

165 A cry arose from that true lover:—

“The covenant of those of wet skirt (sin-stained) is sluggish.

“A son of pleasant temperament and handsome face—is necessary;

“To his father, say:—In ignorance, cast away his hair.

“My soul has mingled with his love;

“My heart is not attached to his hair.”

When thou hast a handsome countenance, suffer not grief;  
For, if the hair falls, it will again grow.

The vine gives not always a green cluster;  
It sometimes sheds its leaves; sometimes gives fruit.

170 Sun-like, the great fall under a veil (of eclipse);  
Spark-like, the envious fall into the water.

The sun comes forth from beneath the cloud,  
Gradually; but, the spark perishes in the water.

Oh approved friend! fear not the darkness,  
In which it is possible there is the water of life.

Did not the world find rest, after motion?  
Did not Sa'di travel, until he found his desire?

Consume not thy heart, from failure of desire;  
Oh brother! the night is pregnant with the day.

165 I am not of those. Nay, I am a lover, violence-enduring. I love the nature of the beloved one, not his forelock (kákul).

172 The Water of Life is to be found in a very dark place. See translation of the Sikandar-Náma, by Clarke.

## CHAPTER VII.

## ON EDUCATION.

- <sup>1</sup> THE language (of this chapter) is on integrity, and delibe-  
ration, and disposition ;  
Not on the steed, and the battle-field, and the ball-game.

Thou art fellow-lodger with the enemy,—lust ;  
Why art thou a stranger in the art of conflict ?

Those turning back the rein of lust, from forbidden things,  
Surpassed Rustam and Sâm in manliness.

Chastise thyself, with a stick, boy-like ;  
Beat not men's brains with the heavy mace.

- <sup>5</sup> No one has concern for an enemy like thee,  
Who prevailst not against thy own body.

---

<sup>1</sup>

This couplet means :—Our language is on the correcting of the passions, and deliberating on the future world, and perfecting the disposition ; not on reining the steed, and galloping in the battle-field.

- <sup>2</sup> Thou shouldst slay so near an enemy ; but wonderful to say—thou art careless of him, and a stranger as to contest with him.

Thy body is a city full of good and bad ;  
Thou art sultán ; and wisdom (is) the prime-minister.

Know for sure, that the mean, neck-exalting,  
 In this city are—pride, and passion, and avarice.

Resignation and the fear of God are the free of good report ;  
 Lust and concupiscence are highway-men and cut-purses.

When the sultán displays favour to the bad,  
 How may ease remain for the wise ?

10 Lust, and avarice, and pride, and envy  
 Are like blood in thy veins ; and, like the soul in thy body.

If these enemies should obtain nurture,  
 They would turn aside their heads from thy order and  
 judgment.

On the part of lust and concupiscence, opposition remains  
 not,  
 When they experience the grasp of sharp wisdom.

The Ra'is, who punished not the enemy,  
 Ruled not also,—by reason of the enemy's power.

What need to say much in this chapter,  
When a word is enough, if a person acts upon it ?

15 If thou bringst thy feet, mountain-like, (firmly) beneath  
 thy skirt,  
 Thy head will pass beyond the sky in grandeur.

Oh man, much-knowing ! draw within the tongue ;  
 For, at the Resurrection, there is no register, as to the  
 tongueless.

---

16 At the Resurrection, there will be no reckoning of deeds done by  
 tongueless animals. It is possible that the expression "tongueless"  
 here means—little-speaking. For, in truth, nothing casts men head-  
 long into hell-fire, save the requital of words spoken by the tongue.



Those scattering the jewel of secrets, oyster-like,  
Opened not their mouths, save for pearls (of lustrous  
words).

The one great in speech (loquacious) is stuffed as to his  
ears (deaf);  
He takes not advice, save in silence.

When thou wishst to speak incessantly,  
Thou findst not pleasure from the speech of any.

- 20 It is improper to utter unprepared speech;  
It is unfit, to cut (to stop a person's speech) not cast out  
(delivered).

Those reflecting on falsehood and truth,  
Are better than triflers, ready of answer.

In man's soul, speech is perfection;  
Make not thyself of less account, by speech.

Thou seest not the little talker ashamed;  
A grain of musk is better than a heap of clay.

Exercise caution as to the fool having the speech of ten  
men;  
Utter, like a wise man, one prepared speech.

- 25 Thou didst cast a hundred arrows, and each of the hun-  
dred is a miss;  
If thou art wise, cast one straight.

Why does a man utter in secret that thing,  
When, if it becomes known, his face becomes yellow?

- 21 "Zhazh" signifies—a grass excessively hard, which the camel eats.  
"Zhazh-khá" is opposed to "shakr-khá"; it is synonymous with  
"behúda-go"; "sakht-go."

- 24 Nizámí says:—  
"If thou knowst, say little; *Must be kept quiet.*  
Utter not one thing a hundred times; say a hundred things once."

Detract not, in front of a wall,  
Behind which, it often happens some one has his ear.

The interior of thy heart is the rampart of a secret,  
Take care that it may not see the city-door open.

The wise man has sewn up his mouth, for that reason,  
That he sees the candle is consumed by its tongue (wick).

---

30 Takash uttered a secret to his slaves,  
Saying :—" It is improper to unfold this secret to any  
one."

In one year, it came from the heart to his lip ;  
In one day, it became published in the world.

He ordered the merciless executioner,  
Saying :—" Take off the heads of these, with the sword."

One, from amongst the slaves, while he asked for pro-  
tection, said :—  
" Slay not the slaves ; for, this crime arose from thee. "

" At first, when it was a mere fountain, thou didst not  
bind it ;

" When it became a torrent, of what use is binding ? "

35 Reveal thou not the heart's secret to any one,  
Who will, indeed, utter it to every one.

Entrust the jewel to the treasury-guards ;  
But, keep guard over the secret thyself.

So long as thou utterst not speech, to thee, there is power  
over it ;

When it becomes uttered, it obtains mastery over thee.

Thou knowst that when the demon has departed from  
bonds,

He returns not again at the—Lá haul—of any one.

Speech is a confined demon in the heart's well ;  
Let it not go to the height of palate and tongue.

40 One can give way to the ugly demon ;  
But, one cannot seize him again by fraud.

A child may take off the tether from (the steed) Rakhsh ;  
It comes not within the noose, with a hundred Rustams.

Utter not that which, if it falls on an assembly (becomes  
revealed),  
A person, on its account, falls into calamity.

How well said the woman to the ignorant villager,—  
"Utter speech, with wisdom ; or, express not a breath."

Utter not what thou hast not the power to hear ;  
For, having sown barley, thou wilt not reap wheat. *Imp.*

45 How well, (the Indian sage) Barhaman expressed this  
proverb :— *M. S.*  
"Every one's dignity is of himself."

It is unnecessary that thou shouldst play much,  
In order that thou mayst shatter thy own value.

---

A certain one was of good disposition, but ragged garment  
clad,  
Who was silent for some time, in Egypt.

---

38 "Lá haul walá kúwata illá bi-lláh"—there is no power, nor strength,  
but in God !

41 Rakhsh was the name of Rustam's steed.

The wise men, from near and far,  
Around him, moth-like, light-seeking.

One night, within his own heart, he reflected,  
Saying :—" A man is hidden under his own tongue.

50 " Even so, if I lower my head to myself ;  
" How many men know whether I am wise ? "

He spoke ; and enemy and friend knew  
That he was indeed, in Egypt, more ignorant than himself.

Those who used to be in his presence became dispersed ;  
and his work ruined ;  
He made a journey ; and, on the arch of a masjid, wrote :—

" If I had, in a mirror, beheld myself,  
" I would not, in foolishness, have rent the curtain.

" So ugly,—I lifted the screen from it ;  
" For, I thought myself of good visage."

55 For the one little speaking, there is great fame ;  
When thou spakest, and splendour remained not to thee,—  
fly.

Oh lord of sense ! for thee, silence  
Is dignity ; and, for the worthless one, a curtain.

If thou art a sage, take not away fear of thyself (as to  
uttering speech) ;  
And, if thou art a fool, rend not thy own screen.

Display not quickly the idea of thy own mind ;  
For, whenever thou wishst, thou canst reveal it.

---

49 'Alî, cousin and son-in-law of Muḥammad, spoke as given in the second line.

50 The first line signifies—" If I keep silent."

But, when a man's secret is discovered,  
One cannot, by endeavour, make it again secret.)

60 How well the pen concealed the sultán's secret,  
At the head of which, so long as the knife was not, it  
spoke not.

The wild beasts are silent,—mankind speakers ;  
The foolish speaker is worse than the wild beast.

It is proper to utter speech with sense, like a man ;  
Or, otherwise, to be silent like a wild-beast.

By articulation and sense, one man-born is known ;  
Be not loquacious and foolish, parrot-like.

A certain foolish one spoke at the time of quarrelling ;  
With the hand, they rent his collar.

65 He suffered blows on the back of his head ; and sate naked  
and weeping ;  
One, world-experienced, said to him :—“ Oh self-wor-  
shipper ! ”

“ If thou hadst, rose-bud-like, been mouth-closed, [ V. Sub.  
“ Thou wouldst not have seen thy shirt rent, rose-like.” ]

The confounded one utters speech full of folly ;  
Like a brainless (hollow) drum, much-boasting.

Seest thou not, that the tongue is only a fire ?  
One can extinguish it, in a moment, with water.

If a man be possessed of skill,  
Skill itself will speak, not the possessor of skill.

70 If thou hast pure musk, speak not ;  
For, if it be (existent),—it becomes known by its smell.

To say, with an oath,—“the gold is of the West,” } *M. J. P.*  
 What need? the touch-stone, indeed, will say what it is. }

A thousand calumniators will speak, for this reason,  
 Saying :—“Sa'di is neither skilful nor sociable.”

It is allowable if they rend my fur-coat (slander me);  
 For, I have not the power (of endurance) that they should  
 take my brain (by much talking).

The son of King 'Azúd was very ill;  
 Patience was far from his father's nature.

75 A certain pious one spoke to 'Azúd, by way of advice,  
 Saying :—“Let go the wild fowls from confinement.”

He broke the cages of the birds, morning-singing;  
 —Who remains in confinement, when the prison is  
 broken?

The king kept on the arch of the garden-house,  
 One famous nightingale, a sweet singer.

The son, in the early morn, hastened towards the garden;  
 He found only that bird, on the arch of the hall.

He laughed, saying :—“Oh nightingale of pleasant voice!  
 “Thou art left in a cage, on account of thy sweet speech.”

80 No one has business with thee, speechless;  
 But, when thou spakest, bring its proof. }

Like Sa'dí, who, for some time, closed his tongue;  
 (And) escaped from the calumny of calumniators.

---

81 This couplet may be rendered :—  
 Like Sa'dí, who, while he was tongue-bound,  
 Was free from the calumny of calumniators.

That one takes ease of heart into his bosom,  
Who, from people's society, takes the edge (of the road).

Oh wise man ! make not evident the people's defect ;  
Be occupied with thy own defect, not with that of the  
people.

When they speak falsely, apply not the ear (listen not) ;  
When thou seest one uncovered, cover thy eyes.

---

85 I have heard that, at a banquet of intoxicated slaves,  
A disciple broke the minstrel's tambourine and harp.

They drew him, at once, by the hair, harp-like,  
The slaves struck him on the face, drum-like.

At night, from pain of stick and slap, he slept not ;  
The next day, an old man said to him, by way of admoni-  
tion :—

" Thou wishst not to be face-wounded drum-like ;  
" Oh brother ! cast down thy head, in front, harp-like."

---

Two persons beheld dust, and tumult, and conflict ;  
Shoes scattered ; stones flying.

90 This one saw the commotion ; he turned away from its  
direction ;

The other went into the midst, and broke his head.

No one is happier than one lord of himself ;  
For, he has no concern with the good and bad.

---

83 Note the difference between "ba chíze mashghúl búdan" and "az chíze mashghúl búdan."

They placed thy eye and ear in the head ;  
The mouth, the place of speech ; and, the heart the place  
of sense.

Perhaps, thou mayst again know descent from ascent ; )  
Thou mayst not say :—" This is short, that long." } *V. 94.*

Thus spoke an old man of approved sense,  
 —The words of old men are pleasing to the ear.—

95 Saying :—In India, I went down to a corner ;  
 What saw I ? A black man, long, like the longest winter-  
 night.

In his embrace, a girl, moon-like,  
 His teeth lowered to her lips.

In his embrace, so tightly gathered,  
 That thou wouldst say :—the night covers the day.

The well known command of God seized my skirt ;  
 Presumption became a fire and seized me.

From before and behind, I sought for a stick or stone,  
 Saying :—" Oh one fearing not God ! nameless and shame-  
 less."

100 With reproach, and abuse, and outery, and force,  
I separated the white (girl) from the black (man) as the  
dawn.

From above the garden, that horrible cloud departed ;  
 From beneath the crow, that egg appeared.

93 Thou mayst be cautious in thy gait.

94 In the 'Tkd-i-manẓúm, couplets 94 to 116 are omitted.

98 It is proper to dissuade a person from violating an order of God.



From the reciting of—Lá haul—that demon-form leaped forth ;

The hand of the one of Parí-form clung to me.

Saying :—“ Oh thou of the prayer-carpet of hypocrisy,  
blue-clad ;

“ Of black deeds, world-purchaser, religion-seller !

“ A long time, my heart had gone from the hand

“ To this person ; and, my soul was desirous of him.

105 “ Now became cooked my raw morsel,

“ Which hot thou didst put out of my mouth.”

She brought an accusation of tyranny, and uttered complaint,

Saying :—“ Compassion fell down, and mercy remained not.

“ None of the young men remained a helper,

“ Who might take justice from me, from this old man,

“ To whom shame of his old age comes not,

“ To fix his hand in the veil of a woman, unlawful to him.”

My skirt in her grasp, she kept complaining ;

From shame, my head remained in the collar.

110 Like garlic, I immediately went out of my garment ;

For, I feared the rebuke of young and old.

Naked, I went running from before the woman ;

For, my garment in her hand was better than myself.

After a time, she passed by me,

Saying :—“ Knowst thou me ? ” I replied :—“ Beware !

“ On account of thy hand, I have repented,

“ Saying, I wander not again about a matter of interference.”

Such a matter comes not before that one,  
Who wisely sits behind his own work.

115 Through this disgrace, I took up this counsel,  
I regarded, in future, the thing seen, un-seen.

If thou hast sense and wisdom, draw within the tongue;  
Like Sa'dí, utter speech; if not, be silent.

A certain one sate before Dá'ud of the tribe of Tai,  
Saying:—"I saw a certain Súfí fallen drunk.

"His turban and shirt, vomit-stained;  
"A crowd of dogs, a ring around him."

When the one of happy disposition heard this tale,  
He gathered together his eyebrows at the speaker.

120 For a time, he was amazed, and said:—"Oh companion!  
"A kind friend is of use to-day.

"Go; bring him from that shameful place;  
"For it is forbidden in the law; and, a disgrace as to the  
religious garb.

"Bring him on thy back, like men, for the intoxicated one  
"Has not the rein of safety in his hand."

Through this speech, the hearer became straitened in  
heart;

He descended into thought, like an ass in the mire.

Neither the boldness, that he might refuse the order;  
Nor the power, that he might bring the drunken one on  
his shoulder.

---

117 Abú Sulaimán Dá'ud bin Naṣr belonged to the great Shaiḫs, and to the Lords of Súfí-ism. He was the pupil of Abú Ḥanífa the Kúfite.

125 He contorted himself, for a while ; but, saw no remedy ;  
He saw no way of drawing his head out of the order.

He bound his loins, and without choice, on his back,  
Brought him ; and, a city about him, in ferment.

One reviled him, saying :—" Behold the daryesh (Súfi) !  
" Oh wonderful devotees of pure religion !

" See thou these Súfis, who have drunk wine ;  
" (Who) have pawned the patched garment for aromatic  
wine."

{ Pointing with the hand to this one and the other,  
Saying :—" This one is altogether drunk ; and, that one,  
half drunk." } *Josh-i-awamm*

130 The sword of the enemy's violence on the neck  
Is better than the disgrace of a city, and the clamour of  
the people.

He suffered calamity ; and, with trouble, passed one day ;  
He carried him, without desire, to a place that he had.

During the night, from shame and thought, he slept not ;  
The next day Tai laughed, and said :—

" Spill not a brother's reputation in the street,  
" That adverse fortune may not spill thy reputation, in a  
city."

—  
In respect to the man, good or bad,—ill  
Utter not. Oh young man endowed with understanding !

135 For, thou makest the bad man thy enemy ;  
And, if he be a good man, thou doest ill.

Whosoever says to thee, a certain one is bad ;  
Know this much, that he is censuring himself.

For, the proof of (the bad) act of a person is necessary ;  
And, his (the calumniator's) bad act appears clear.

In ill-speaking, when thou expressest breath,  
If thou speakst the truth even, thou art bad.

A person made long his tongue, in slander ;  
A sagacious one, head-exalting spoke to him,

140 Saying :—" Render not bad the memory of persons, before  
me ;

" Make me not evilly suspicious, as to thyself.

" I admit—there may be diminution of his dignity ;  
" There will be no increase to thy rank."

A person said—I thought it was a jest— *Y. Imp.*  
" Thieving is more upright than slandering."

I said to him :—" Oh friend of distracted sense !  
" That tale came strangely to my ear.

" What goodness, seest thou in dishonesty,  
" That thou preferst it to slander ?"

145 He replied,—" Yes ; thieves display ardour ;  
" By the manly arm, they fill the belly.

---

136 "Dar postín-i-khud búdan " signifies—mazimmat-i-khud kardan. See  
couplet 162.

"From slander, what does that simpleton desire,  
"Who blackened his record-book (with God) and enjoyed  
not anything?"

In the Nizámiya, I had a pension; *V. Jamb.*  
Night and day, there was instruction and repetition.

I said to my teacher:—"Oh one full of wisdom!  
"A certain friend bears me envy.

"When I give the gift of signification, as to the traditions,  
"His polluted heart becomes disturbed."

150 When the leader of morals heard this speech,  
He was greatly enraged, and said:—"How wonderful!

"Thy friend's enviousness is disagreeable to thee;  
"Who informed thee that detraction is good?"

"If he, through baseness, took hell's path,  
"Thou, by this other path, reachst it."

A certain one said:—"Hujjáj is a blood-devourer,  
"His heart is like a piece of black stone.

"He fears neither the sigh, nor the complaint of the  
people;  
"Oh God! Take from him the justice due to the people."

155 One, world-experienced, an old man of ancient birth,  
Gave to a young man, a piece of counsel, worthy of an old  
man,

147 The Nizámiya was a college at Baghdád. It was founded by Nizámu-l-Mulk Túsi, the vazír of Sultán Sanjár of Persia.

153 Hujjáj, son of Yusuf, ruled 'Irák-i-'Arab, in 685 A.D. He was notorious for cruelty.

The ancient village-holder heard this speech;  
He was confounded, and said :—" Oh execrable filthy one !

175 " Saidst thou not that, the tooth-brush during a fast is a crime ?

" To eat the dead sons of Ádam is lawful.

" Say—first, the mouth from things unfit to be uttered,

" Wash—to that one who has washed as to things fit to be eaten."

The person, whose name is mentioned in public,  
Recite his name and praises, in the sweetest way.

When always thou sayst that men are asses  
Entertain not the idea, that they, like men, will mention thy name.

Speak of my mode of life, within the street, even as  
Thou canst speak of it to my face.

180 { And, if thou hast shame of the one present  
Oh sightless one! is not the Secret-Knower (God)  
present? } *Imp.*

Shame comes not to thee of thyself  
That thou hast freedom as to Him, and shame as to me?

---

Those path-recognising of firm foot  
Sate, some time, together in privacy.

One from amongst them began to slander,  
He opened the door of remembrance of a helpless one.

A person said to him :—" Oh friend of perturbed com-  
plexion !

" Hast thou ever made war against the infidels in Europe ?"

185 The slanderer said :—" From behind my four walls,  
 " I have not, during my whole life, placed my foot in front  
 " (of them)."

The darvesh of pure breath thus spoke :—

" I have not beheld a person, to such a degree greatly dis-  
 traught,

" That the infidel sits secure from contest with him ;  
 " (But) a Muslim escapes not from the violence of his  
 tongue."

How well a distraught one of Margház uttered  
 A saying, from the subtlety of which thou mayst bite the  
 lip with the teeth :—

" If I defame the name of men,  
 " I only utter the slander of my mother.

190 " For the wise educated ones know,  
 " That that devotion is indeed best which the mother  
 takes."

Oh one of good name ! a friend, who is absent,—  
 As to him, two things are unlawful.

One is that they should wrongfully enjoy his property ;  
 The second that they should defame him.

Whosoever defames men,  
 Expect not thou thy own thanks from him.

190 'Abdu-lláh says :—" If I slander anyone, I ought to slander my father  
 and mother ; for they are worthy of my good deeds. When a person  
 slanders another, the angels give the slanderer's good deeds to the  
 slandered."

In the traditions, it is stated :—" If a person oppresses, the boldness  
 of the oppressed goes to the oppressor ; and the goodness of the oppressor  
 to the oppressed."

For, he utters that very thing in thy absence,  
Which he utters before thee, behind men.

195 In my opinion, that person is world-wise,  
Who is engaged about himself, and careless of the world.

---

As to three persons, I have heard that slander is lawful;  
When thou exceedst this, the fourth is a sin.

First, the king, reproach-approving,—  
From whom, thou mayst observe injury as to the people's  
heart,—

It is lawful to carry information regarding him;  
Perhaps, the people may be cautious of him.

Secondly,—draw not the screen on the shameless one;  
For, he himself rends the screen of his own body.

200 Oh brother! guard not, from the (shallow) pool, him,  
Who falls, up to the neck, in a well.

Thirdly—the one of crooked balance, of dishonest disposition,  
Utter whatsoever thou knowst of his bad deeds.

---

I have heard that a thief entered from the desert,  
He passed by the gate of Sístán.

The green-grocer robbed him of half a dāng,  
The thief of black deeds raised a cry:—

---

201 This couplet describes the fraudulent trader.  
202 Rustam used to live in Sístán.



“ Oh God ! burn not Thou in the fire the night-traveller  
(robber) ;

“ For, an inhabitant of Sístán road travels (robs) by day.”

205 A certain one said to a Súfí, possessed of purity ;—

“ Knowst thou not what a certain person said behind thy  
back ? ”

He replied :—“ Oh brother ! be silent ; go to sleep :  
“ What the enemy said,—best unknown.”

Those persons, who bear the enemy's message,  
Are, assuredly, more an enemy than the enemy.

Bears the enemy's word to a friend, no one,  
Save that one, who is, in enmity, the enemy's friend.

The enemy is unable to express violence to me,  
To such a degree that my body should tremble at hearing  
(his words).

210 Thou art the greater enemy, who bringst to the mouth  
(openly),

What the enemy said, in secret.

The word-plucker makes fresh the ancient feud ;  
He brings the good, meek, man to anger.

So long as thou canst, fly from that fellow-sitter,  
Who said to the dormant trouble—“ Arise ! ”

(To be) a man of black condition (in distress),—in it, foot-  
bound,

Is better than to carry strife from place to place.

Contest, between two persons, is like fire ; } *Y. G. G. G.*  
The unfortunate tale-bearer is the fire-wood cutter.

215 Fíridún had an approved vazír,  
Who possessed an illumined heart, and far-seeing eye.

First, he used to preserve resignation to God;  
Next, he used to keep observance of the king's command.

The mean functionary places trouble upon the people,  
Saying :—" It is the administration of the country and the  
augmentation of the treasury."

If thou keepst not God's side,  
God causes injury to reach thee from the king.

A certain one went, in the morning, to the king,  
Saying :—" May ease and desire every day be thine !

220 " Consider it not design ; accept counsel from me ;  
" This vazír is, in secret, thy enemy.

" Of the high and low of the army—none have remained,  
" Who have not loans of silver and gold from him.

" On the condition that,—when the king, neck-exalting,  
" Dies,—they give back that gold and silver.

" That self-worshipper wishes not thee, alive ;  
" Lest that he should not regain his money."

Often, towards the vazír, the asylum of the kingdom,  
The king, with the eye of punishment, used to glance,

225 Saying :—" In the semblance of friends, before me,  
" Why art thou, in heart, my enemy ?"

The vazír kissed the ground before his throne and said :  
" Since thou askst, it is now improper to conceal.

" Oh renowned king ! I this wish,  
" That the world, like me, may be thy well-wisher.

“ When thy death is the stated period for (the return of)  
my silver,

“ They will, from fear of me, wish thee greater permanency.

“ Desirest thou not that men, with sincerity and supplication,

“ Should wish thy head green, and thy life long.

230 “ Men reckon prayer—a gain ;

“ For, it is the cuirass against the arrow of calamity.”

The monarch approved of what he said :

The rose of his face, from freshness, expanded.

Of the rank and station, which the prime-minister  
possessed,  
He increased its dignity, and exalted its rank.

Than a calumniator, I have seen no one more afflicted ;  
Of more reversed fortune, and overturned state.

Through the ignorance and obscurity of judgment, which  
is his,  
He casts altercation between two friends.

235 Another time, this and that (the two friends) make glad  
their hearts ;

He, between them, unfortunate and ashamed,

To kindle a fire between two persons ; M. Jamb.  
To consume oneself in the midst—is not wisdom.

Like Sa'dí, that one tasted the delight of retirement,  
Who, from both worlds, withdrew his tongue.

Whatever thou knowst of profitable speech—utter ;  
Though it be acceptable to no one.

For, to-morrow (the Judgment Day), he penitent may raise  
 a cry,  
 Saying :—" Alas ! why did I not listen to the truth ? "

---

240 A good, order-bearing, chaste wife  
 Makes a poor man, a king.

Go ; strike five times (in joy) at thy door,  
 That a concordant mistress is in thy bosom.

If, all day, thou endurest grief,—have no care,  
 When, at night, the dear companion is in thy embrace.

Whose house is prosperous, and bed-fellow, a companion—  
 God's glance is, in mercy, towards him.

When the wife of beautiful face is chaste,  
 The husband, by beholding her, is in Paradise.

245 That person took up, from the world, his heart's desire,  
 Whose mistress was concordant with him.

If she be chaste, and pleasant of speech,  
 Look not at her beauty, or deformity.

From the one of Parí-face, of bad disposition,—takes  
 away (the ball of empire),  
 The woman of demon-face of pleasant disposition.

From her husband's hand, she takes vinegar, like sugar ;  
 Face vinegar plastered, she eats not sweetmeats.

250 The woman, well-wishing is the heart's-ease ;  
 But, from the bad woman,—oh God ! protect me.

As a parrot, for whom a crow was companion,  
Considers freedom from the cage,—gain,—

Place thy head in wandering, in the world ;  
 Place, otherwise, thy heart on helplessness.

To go bare-foot,—better than the tight shoe;  
The toil of travel,—better than contention in the house.

A captive in the kází's dungeon,—better  
Than, in the house, to see contraction on the eyebrow (of  
the wife).

255 Travel is a festival to that house-master,  
In whose house is a wife of bad disposition.

Shut the door of joyfulness on that house,  
From which, the wife's clamour issues loudly.

When the wife takes the path to the bázár, strike;  
Otherwise, sit, in the house, wife-like.

If the wife has no ear for her husband,  
Clothe the man in her black garment.

The wife, who is ignorant and dishonourable,  
Thou didst ask for a calamity on thy head,—not a woman.

260 When, in the barley-measure, she breaks faith,  
Wash thy hand of the wheat-store.

God has desired good to that slave,  
For whom, the heart and hand of the wife are true.

When the wife laughs in the stranger's face,  
To the husband, say:—"Boast not further of manliness."

May the woman's eyes be blind, as to strangers!  
When she goes out of the house, may it be to her grave!

When the wanton wife places her hand in the fried meat,  
Say:—"Go; put thy hand in a man's face."

---

260 The wife who abandons rectitude,—as to her being a harlot, have no  
doubt.

265 When thou seest that the woman's foot is not in one place.  
Silence is not the part of wisdom and judgment.

Fly from her hand, into the crocodile's mouth;  
For dying is better than life, in distress.

Cause her face to be covered from the strange man;  
And, if she hear not,—then whether wife, or husband,—  
what difference?

The beautiful wife of pleasant disposition is fortune and  
companion;  
Release (divorce) the wife, ugly, discordant.

How well came this single speech from those two persons,  
Who were bewildered by a woman's hand.

270 This one said:—"Let there not be a bad wife for any  
one!"

The other said:—"Let there not be a woman, in the world  
itself!"

Oh friend! every fresh spring, take a new wife;  
For, last year's almanac is of no use.

Whomsoever, thou seest captive to a woman;  
Do not—oh Sa'di! reproach him not.

Thou also mayst suffer violence, and endure her burden,—  
If, one night, thou drawst her into thy embrace.

---

A young man, from want of concordance with his wife,  
Bewailed to an old man, and said:—

---

271 The first line may be rendered:—

Take a virgin woman.

275 "A heavy load, from the hand of this bold enemy,  
 "I endure, even as the nether mill-stone."

He said to him:—"Oh sir! place thy heart on distress;  
 "No one, by patience exercising, becomes ashamed.

"Oh one house-burning! at night, thou art the upper  
 mill-stone;  
 "In the day, why art thou the nether stone?"

When thou mayst have experienced pleasure from a rose-  
 bush,  
 If thou endurest the burden of its thorn, it is proper.

The tree, whose fruit thou constantly enjoyst,  
 At that time,—when thou sufferst its thorn,—be patient.

280 When a boy has passed ten years of age,  
 Say:—"Sit apart from those not unlawful (to him in  
 marriage)."

It is not right to kindle a fire on cotton;  
 For, while thou winkst the eye, the house is burned.

When thou wishst that thy name may remain in place  
(of honour),  
Teach the son wisdom, and judgment.

When his skill and judgment are insufficient,  
 Thou wilt die; and, none of thy family will remain.

He endures severity for much time,  
The son,—whom the father tenderly cherishes.

276 "Ba sakhtī dil nihādan" signifies—to be content with hardship.

277 "Khāna-soz" is a word of the same class as "jahān-soz." It signifies  
 —one complaining of others; time-stricken; shameless; unjust.

285 Keep him wise and abstinent;  
If thou lovest him, keep him not by endearing expressions.

Rebuke and instruct him, in childhood;  
Exercise promise and fear, as to his good and bad deeds.

For the young student,—commendation, and praise, and  
reward  
(Are) better than the master's reprimand, and threatening.

Teach the one matured, hand-toil;  
Even if, Kárún-like, thou hast command as to wealth.

How knowst thou—the revolution of time  
May cause him to wander, in exile, in the country?

290 Rely not on that resource which is;  
For, it may be, that wealth may not remain in thy hand.

When, for him—there are the resources of trade,  
How may he bear the hand of beggary before any one?

The purse of silver and gold reaches its limit;  
The purse of the trader becomes not empty.

Knowst thou not how Sa'dí obtained his object?  
He neither traversed the desert, nor ploughed the sea.

In childhood, he suffered slaps from the great;  
In matureness, God gave him purity.

295 Whosoever places his neck (in submission) to order,  
Not much time passes, but he gives orders.

Every child, who the violence of the teacher,  
Experiences not,—will suffer the violence of time.

Keep the son good and cause ease to reach him,  
That his eyes (of expectation) may not remain on the  
hands of others.



Whosoever endured not grief for his son,  
Another suffered grief and abused him.

Preserve him from the bad teacher ;  
For, the unfortunate and road-lost one makes him, like  
himself.

300 Desire not one of more black deeds than that herma-  
phrodite,  
Whose face becomes black (with sin) before the sprouting  
of the beard.

From that one, void of honour, it is proper to fly ;  
For, his unmanliness spilled the water (of honour) of men.

The boy who sate among Kalandars,  
To his father, say :—" Wash thy hands of his welfare."

Suffer not regret as to his destruction and ruin,  
For, the degenerate son, dead before his father, (is) best.

---

One night, in my street, there was a convivial meeting ;—  
Men of every class, in that assembly.

---

302 The *Ḳalandar*, or *Kalandar*, or *Kanda*,<sup>e</sup> *nátarashída*, has, in perfection, the disposition of going alone to *Makka* ; of leading a solitary life ; and of strenuously exerting himself in the demolishing of customs and forms of worship. He has no religious teacher ; at the same time, he does not refuse to take *muríds* or disciples. The *Ṣúffs* blame the order.

The *Malámatí* is one who keeps secret the worship of God from others, who displays neither goodness nor beauty, and who conceals neither wickedness nor evil.

The *Ṣáfi* is one whose heart is not engaged with the people.

The *Ṣáfi* is higher than the other two, because they are obedient to saints and prophets.

They apply the word *Ḳalandar* to wicked men, on account of their outward similarity to *Kalandars*, and to wine-drinkers. Of these three sects, the *Ḳalandar* alone shaves his head.

305 When the musician's voice entered from the street,  
The há,e hú,e of lovers went to the firmament.

One of fairy face was my beloved;  
I said to him :—" Oh my beautiful toy !

" Why comest thou not, with thy companions, to the  
assembly,

" That thou mayst illumine our assembly, candle-like ?"

I heard that he went, and by himself,  
Kept saying to me :—" Oh my lover !

" When thou hast not a beard, like men ;  
" It is not manliness to sit before men."

---

310 The beardless boy, house-mining, ruins thee ;  
Go ; make the house prosperous with a pleasant woman.

It is improper to play at love, with a rose,  
Which has, every morning, a fresh nightingale.

Since, in every assembly, he made himself a candle,  
Wander not again, about him, moth-like.

A woman, good, and of pleasant disposition and adorned,—  
How does she resemble the ignorant youth ?

Blow a breath of fidelity upon her, rose-bud-like,  
Who follows thee, with laughing, rose-like.

---

310 "Khána kan" signifies—ná-khalaf, one who does wicked deeds.

313 That woman, good and pleasant, is like a rose-bud.

Then, as the rose-bud, with the breath of the morning wind, laughs—  
do thou breathe the breath of fidelity, and see that, rose-like, with  
much laughter, she will fall in rear and display cordiality.

315 Not like a beloved boy, impudent,  
Whom one cannot break with a stone.

Consider him (the boy) not charming, like the húrí of  
Paradise,

For whom, the face of another is ugly, demon-like.

If thou dost kiss his feet, he has no thanks (to give);  
And, if thou art the dust (in humility), he has no fear.

Make void thy head of brain, and hand of money,  
When thou givest thy heart to the son of man.

Exercise not the evil glance, towards the son of man;  
Lest evil should arise to thy own son.

320 Once upon a time, it reached my ear in this city (of  
Shiráz),  
That a certain merchant purchased a slave.

\* \* \* \* \*

The one of fairy-face, whatever fell to his hand,  
Broke, in malice, the head and brain of the foolish mer-  
chant.

\* \* \* \* \*

He summoned God and His Prophet to himself, as witness,  
Saying:—"I will not again wander about folly."

325 In this week, journeying chanced to him,  
Heart-wounded, and head-bound, and face-torn.

315 "Pech bar pech" here signifies—mahbúb.

321 For obvious reasons, couplets 321 and 323 are omitted.

When he went one or two miles out of Kazrún  
A dangerous, stony place appeared before him.

He inquired, saying :—"What is the name of this  
castle?"

Saying :—"Whosoever lives sees many wonderful things."

An intimate companion of the káraván thus spoke to  
him :—

"Thou knowst not, perhaps, the place called—tang-i-  
turkán?"

The merchant grieved when he heard the name—tang-i-  
turkán;

Thou wouldst have said, that he had beheld the sight of  
an enemy.

330 He raised a great shout at the black,  
Saying :—"Why urgest thou farther? Throw away the  
goods.

"To me, there is not a barley-grain of wisdom, nor know-  
ledge,

"If I again go to the—tang-i-turkán."

Shut the door of lust of the ungrateful soul;  
Or, if thou art a lover,—suffer the kick, and bind the  
head.

When thou cherishst a slave,  
Bring him up in awe, so that thou mayst enjoy advantage  
from him.

And, if the lord bite with the teeth (kisses) his slave's lip,  
He (the slave) matures the fancy of lordship.

326 Kazrún is at a distance of two karoh (twenty miles) from Shíráz.

One mīl = four thousand camel-paces = one-third of a farsang.

327 The merchant thought the lofty rocks a castle.

328 "Turk" signifies—mahbúb.

- 335 The slave should be water-drawer, and brick-maker ;  
The cherished slave is a fist-striker. } *V. Imp.*

A crowd sate with a pleasant youth,  
 Saying :—" We are honourable lovers, and possessed of  
 discernment."

Ask (their state) of me, time-wearied ;  
 For the fast-keeper suffers regret at the table-cloth.

The sheep eats the date-seed, for that reason,  
That there is a lock and fastening on the dates. } *V. Imp.*

The head of the oil-presser's ox is towards the grass, for  
that reason,  
That, its tether is short of the rape-seed. } *V. Imp.*

- 340 A certain (chaste) one saw a form possessed of beauty ; } *V. Imp.*  
Through phrensy of love and ecstasy for her, he changed.

Helpless, he cast forth perspiration, to the same degree,  
 As the dew on the leaf of the April-tree.

The sage Bukrát, riding, passed by him ;  
 He inquired, saying :—" What matter befell this one ? "

A person said to him :—" This is a chaste 'ábid,  
 " From whose hand sin never sprang.

335 In some copies, in the second line, "khisht," in place of "musht," occurs.

Then "khisht-zan," in the first line means—brick-maker ; in the second, brick-caster.

337 This couplet is uttered by Sa'dí, in reproach of the statement made in couplet 336.

342 "Bakrát" signifies—Hippocrates.

" Day and night, he goes into the plain and mountain ;  
 " From society, fleeing ; and, with men, disgusted.

345 " One, heart-ravishing, has snatched his heart ;  
 " The foot of his vision has descended into the clay (of  
 love).

" When the reproach of the people comes to his ear,  
 " He says :—Of so much reproach, be silent.

" Say not, if I complain, that he is not excusable ;  
 " For, my complaint is not far from cause.

" This picture snatches not the heart from my hand ;  
 " He (God) takes the heart, who pourtrayed this picture."

The man, work-tried, heard this speech ;  
 Old in years, one cherished, of ripe judgment.

350 He said :—" Although, the soul of goodness goes forth (in  
 these words),

" With whatever thou mayst utter, every one goes not.

" Of the Painter (God) indeed is this picture ;

" Which snatched, in rapine, the heart of the distraught.

" Why does not the child of one day (in age) ravish his sense,

" For, in beholding the creating of God, whether of ripe  
 age, or tender,—what difference ? "

The asserter of God's truth looks at the camel, in the  
 same way,

As, at the beauties of Chín and Chigál.

352 The poet saith :—

" From sky to earth, if thou lookst with wisdom,

There is not an atom in which there is not a strange mystery."

353 In Chigal and Turkistán the people are very handsome.

Every line of mine of this book (the Bustán) is a woman's  
veil

Lowered on the cheek of the one, heart-alluring.

355 There are meanings (clear) beneath the black letters,  
Like the beloved one behind the curtain; or the moon  
behind the cloud.

In the times of Sa'dí sorrow is not comprehended;  
For, there is so much beauty of thought behind the screen  
(of black letters).

For me,—there are words, assembly adorning,  
In them, fire-like, illumination (for the seeker) and burning  
(for the envious).

I grieve not of enemies, if (through envy) they tremble;  
For, through this Persian fire, they are in burning.

If he has escaped in the world, from the (people of the)  
world,

It is he, who has closed the door on himself, against the  
people.

360 No one escaped from the violence of tongues, { V. 3/2 }  
Whether he be self-displaying, or truth-worshipping.

If, angel-like, thou dost fly from the sky,  
Ill-thought will cling to thy skirt.

One can, with effort, bind the Tigris;  
One cannot bind the enemy's tongue.

354 The author compares the book Bustán to a woman's veil; and its meaning to a lovely one.

357 As in fire there are illumination and heat, so in Sa'dí's language splendour and heart-burning.

Those wet of skirt (sin-stained) sit together,  
Saying:—"This is dry devotion; and that a trap for  
gaining bread."

Turn not thy face from worshipping God,  
Abandon;—so that people may reckon thee as nothing.

365 When the pure God becomes satisfied with the slave,  
If these (people) be not contented,—what matter?

The enemy of the people is not acquainted with God;  
Through the tumult of the people, there is no way for him  
to God.

They have not found the path to the place (of their desire)  
for that reason,  
That, they have missed their foot, at the first step.

Two persons apply their ears (listen) to a tradition:  
From this one, to that—as far as from Ahrimán (Satan) to  
Surosh (Gabriel).

~~One accepts advice; the other, odious,  
Through word-seizing (slandering), is not occupied with  
the advice.~~

370 Dejected, in the dark corner of a place,  
What may he find from the cup, world-displaying?

~~If thou art a lion, or a fox, think not  
That thou mayst escape from these (slanderers) by man-  
liness, or stratagem. M. 4ms.~~

If a person chooses the corner of retirement;  
Because he has not much solicitude for society,—

~~They make him contemptible, saying:—" (This one's work)  
is fraud and deceit;  
"He flies from man, as from the demon."~~



If he be of laughing face and sociable,  
They consider him not chaste and abstinent.

375 With slander, they rend the rich man's skin,  
Saying :—" If, in the world, there be a Far'ún, it is he."

If one, foodless, weeps, with heart-burning,  
They call him :—" Unfortunate and unhappy."

If a poor man be in distress,  
They will say it is—from calamity and misfortune.

And, if a prosperous one comes down from his footing,  
They regard it (his fall) as gain, and God's grace.

Saying :—" How long this dignity and arrogance ?  
" In the rear of happiness, is unhappiness."

380 If as to a straitened one of narrow means,—  
Fortune makes his rank high,

In malice towards him, they gnash their teeth with poison,  
Saying :—" This base time is the cherisher of the mean."

When they behold a work perfect in thy hand,  
They reckon thee covetous, and world-worshipping.

And if thou holdst the hand of resolution from the work  
(of the world),  
They consider thee of the beggar-trade, and cooked food-  
devourer.

And, if thou art an orator,—thou art a drum full of  
nonsense;  
If thou art silent,—thou art a picture (lifeless) of the  
bath-room.

---

377 "Idbár" signifies—pusht dádan.

383 "Pukhta-khwár" signifies—one who gives no toil to his body, but  
devours the earnings of others. It means, also, one who eats the cooked  
food of others, and who is present at their time of eating.

385 They call not those, patience-exercising, men,  
Saying :—"The helpless one, through fear, raised not his  
head."

And, if in his head (nature) there be awe and manliness,  
They fly from him, saying :—"What madness is this?"

If he be a little eater, they slander him,  
Saying :—"His property is perhaps the fortune of another."

And, if his food be excellent and pure, *M. Samp.*  
They call him :—"Belly-slave, and body-cherisher."

And, if the wealth-possessor lives without pomp,  
Saying :—"Decoration is a reproach to people of discern-  
ment."

390 They apply the tongue (of reproach) to his torture, sword-  
like,

Saying :—"The unfortunate one withholds gold from his  
own body!"

If he constructs a palace and painted hall;  
Makes a splendid dress for his own body.

He is ready to die, from the power of cavillers,  
Saying :—"He adorned himself woman-like."

If a devotee travelled not,  
Those, who have made journies call him not a man,

Saying :—"For him, not advanced beyond his wife's  
embrace,

"What is his skill, or judgment, or knowledge?"

395 They even rend the skin of one, world-experienced,  
Saying :—"He is one, head-revolving, of overturned  
fortune.

"If of fortune, there were for him, a portion and share,  
"Time would not drive him from city to city."

The one viewing critically contemns the bachelor,  
Saying :—"The earth is vexed with his sleeping and  
rising."

And, if he marries, he says :—"From the power of the  
heart,  
"He has fallen headlong, in the mire, ass-like."

The one of ugly face escapes not from man's oppression ;  
Nor the lovely one, from the unmanly one of ugly speech.

400 If, one day, anger plucks (a man) from his place,  
They call him :—"Insane, and of obscure judgment."

And, if he exercises patience with any,  
They will say :—"He has not sufficient spirit."

They say, by way of counsel, to the generous one,—  
"Enough !  
"For, to-morrow, both thy hands may be (in beggary)  
before a person."

And if he becomes contented and self-possessing,  
He becomes captive to the reproaching of a crowd,

Saying :—"This mean man wishes to die like his father.  
"Who gave up wealth, and took away regret."

405 Who is able to sit in the corner of safety,  
When the Prophet escaped not from the villainy of the  
enemy ?

Of God,—who resemblance, and partner and co-equal,  
Has not,—heardst thou what the Christian said !

400 In the 'Ikd-i-manẓúm, couplets 400 to 407 are omitted.

405 The infidels say :—"How is he (Muḥammad) a prophet, who eats  
like us, and wanders in the streets and bázár ?"

No one escapes from a person's hand,  
The remedy for the captive is patience only.

There was a young man, skilful and learned,  
Who was, as regards admonishing, vigilant and manly.

Of good repute, and pious, and God-worshipping,  
The beard of his face more beautiful than his hand-  
writing.

410 Strong in eloquence, and clever in grammar;  
But, he used not to utter truly the letters of the Abjad.

Perhaps, he had stammering in the tongue,  
For, he used not to explain the truth of the Mu'jam.

I spoke to one of the pious,  
Saying:—"A certain one has no front teeth."

At my folly, he became red of face,  
Saying:—"Speak not again, in this foolish way.

"Thou didst see in him that very defect, which is existent;  
"From how much skill, thy wisdom's eye was shut!

415 "Listen truly to me; for, in the day of certainty (Re-  
surrection),

"The man, good-seeing, will not experience evil.

"One, who has grace, and science, and judgment,

"—If the foot of his integrity slips from its place.—

"Approve not violence against him, for one small matter.

"What have the sages said:—Take what is clean."

Oh wise man! the thorn and the rose are together:

Why art thou in the fetter of the thorn? fasten thou the  
rose-bouquet.

He—in whose nature, is the ugly disposition,  
Sees not the peacock,—only his ugly foot.

420 Oh one of malevolent face ! acquire purity (of heart) ;  
For, the dark mirror displays not the face.

Seek a path by which, thou mayst escape from punishment  
(of hell) ;  
Not a word (of man), on which thou mayst lay the finger  
(of criticism).

Oh wise one ! place not in front (expose not) the people's  
defects ;

For it sews up thy eyes from thy own defects.

Why do I inflict punishment on the one of stained skirt,  
When I know, within myself, that I am of wet (stained)  
skirt ?

It is improper that thou shouldst exercise violence against  
a person,  
When thou dost aid thyself by artifice of speech.

425 When evil is unpleasant to thee, do not do it thyself ;  
Say, after that, to thy neighbour :—" Do not evil."

If I am God-worshipping ; or if self-displaying ;  
I preserve my exterior for thee, my interior for God.

When I adorned my exterior with chastity,  
Interfere not with my crookedness, or uprightness.

If my way of life be good ; or if bad,  
God is more acquainted than thou, with my secret.

Punish for bad conduct that person,  
Who hopes from thee the reward of goodness.

430 If I am good or bad, be thou silent ;  
For, I am myself the porter of profit and loss.

For a good deed by a man of good judgment,— }  
 For one, God writes ten. *M. 4. 12.*

Oh son! of whomsoever, thou also a single talent  
 Mayst observe,—pass by his ten defects.

Count not upon the finger one defect of his;  
 Bring forth a world of excellence for nothing.

Like the enemy, who, on the poetry of Sa'dí,  
 Glances with scorn, heart ruined.

435 He has no ear for the hundred beautiful subtleties;  
 When he beholds a defect, he raises a shout.

That one, bad-approving,—to whom, there is only this  
 reason,—  
 Envy plucked out his eyes, good-discerning.

Did not God's creating create the people? *M. 4. 12.*  
 Black, and white, and beautiful, and ugly—came.

Not every eye nor eyebrow, that thou seest, is good;  
 Eat the kernel of the pistachio nut; cast away its husk.

---

431 Thus it is written in the Kúrán.

---